

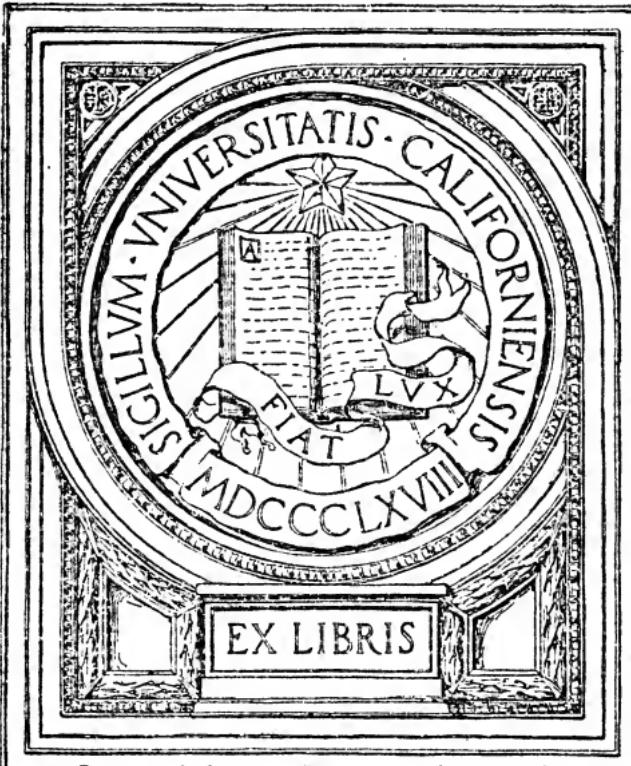
UC-NRLF



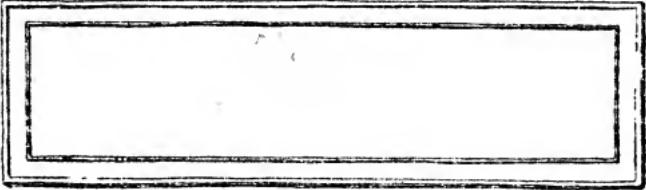
\$B 306 767

IN MEMORIAM

A. F. Lange



Education Department



Tues - 6 above

Wed 11 above

Thurs 6 below

Fri 11 above

Sat 9 above

Sun 8 above

Mon 7 below

Mamie E. Ticknor.

Jan. 1894.

High School.

Helena. Mont.

life = vita, spiritus
anima.

Dear : charms, directors

^{var}
main = resapin
^{var}
last = proxine.

welcome in a gathering

short time ago

the
Jack
affair
is being

The "imperialistic
part of the state

Dec 1st use of salt
like $\frac{1}{2}$ oz.

175

16

172

951

一四六

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD, BARTHOLOMEW,
BULLIONS AND MORRIS, CHASE AND STUART,
GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF "EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION" AND "EXERCISES IN
GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION."

CHICAGO:

S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

1892

COPYRIGHT, 1877,
BY S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

Prof. A. F. Lange
to Education Dept.

UNIVERSITY PRESS: JOHN WILSON & SON
CAMBRIDGE.

P R E F A C E .

THESE Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax ; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's Commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to seven of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to ; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow ; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added ; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction.

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. *The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day* upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me

necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons—American, English, and German—which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, August, 1877.



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	xii
INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS	1
LESSON I.—NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION	3
LESSON II.—NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS	4
Declension of <i>deā</i> and <i>filia</i> .	
LESSON III.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION	6
Nouns in <i>īs</i> ; Gender.	
LESSON IV.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS	7
Nouns in <i>r</i> and <i>um</i> .—Prepositions used with the Ablative.	
LESSON V.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS	9
Genitive Singular of Nouns in <i>iūs</i> or <i>iūm</i> ; Vocative of <i>filiūs</i> and proper names in <i>iūs</i> ; Declension of <i>deūs</i> .—Use of <i>in</i> and <i>sūb</i> .	
LESSON VI.—ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	11
Declension and Agreement of Adjectives.	
LESSON VII.—ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS <i>(continued)</i>	12
Genitive in <i>iūs</i> and Dative in <i>i</i> .	
LESSON VIII.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.—APPOSITION	14
LESSON IX.—VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS	15
LESSON X.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION	16
Personal Endings of the Active Voice; Present Stem; Present Indica- tive Active of <i>āmō</i> .	
LESSON XI.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	18
Subject Nominative.—Agreement of Verb.—Direct Object.	
LESSON XII.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION <i>(continued)</i>	19
Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of <i>āmō</i> .	
LESSON XIII.—MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS	21
LESSON XIV.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION; PERFECT, PLUPER- FECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES; THE PERFECT STEM	23
LESSON XV.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD; USE OF THE IMPERATIVE	25
LESSON XVI.—VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE	26

LESSON XVII.—USE OF THE INFINITIVE Infinitive as Object; Subject of the Infinitive.	27
LESSON XVIII.—GENERAL EXERCISE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS	29
LESSON XIX.—THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS	31
LESSON XX.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	32
LESSON XXI.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>) Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.	33
LESSON XXII.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	35
LESSON XXIII.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	36
LESSON XXIV.—CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SUM	38
LESSON XXV.—PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	38
LESSON XXVI.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	40
LESSON XXVII.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.—DATIVE WITH COM- POUNDS	41
LESSON XXVIII.—CONJUGATION OF POSSUM.—USE OF THE INFINITIVE Infinitive without Subject Accusative.	43
LESSON XXIX.—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO	44
LESSON XXX.—REVIEW OF AMO.—TWO ACCUSATIVES	46
LESSON XXXI.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.	48
LESSON XXXII.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	49
LESSON XXXIII.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	51
LESSON XXXIV.—SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF AMO	52
LESSON XXXV.—DEONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION	53
LESSON XXXVI.—ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—COMPLEX AND COM- POUND SENTENCES	55
LESSON XXXVII.—ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION	56
LESSON XXXVIII.—ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (<i>con- tinued</i>)	58
LESSON XXXIX.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES Declension of Comparatives.	59
LESSON XL.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>)	61
LESSON XLI.—DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	62
LESSON XLII.—ADVERBS Definition; Derivation; Classification; Syntax.	64
LESSON XLIII.—VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	66
LESSON XLIV.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES Accusative of Time.	67

LESSON XLV.—VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE	69
LESSON XLVI.—DEONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION	70
LESSON XLVII.—FOURTH DECLENSION	72
Declension of <i>dōmūs</i> .	
LESSON XLVIII.—FIFTH DECLENSION	73
LESSON XLIX.—VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	74
LESSON L.—VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE	76
LESSON LI.—VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES	78
LESSON LII.—THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN IO	79
LESSON LIII.—DEONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	80
Ablative with certain Deponents.	
LESSON LIV.—GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE	82
Place to which; Place at or in which; Place from which.	
LESSON LV.—NUMERALS.—EXTENT IN SPACE	84
LESSON LVI.—COMPOUND NOUNS.—ABLATIVE OF TIME	86
LESSON LVII.—PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE	87
LESSON LVIII.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): DEMONSTRATIVE	89
LESSON LIX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): RELATIVE	90
Declension; Agreement.	
LESSON LX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE	92
Declension of <i>aliquis</i> .	
LESSON LXI.—CONJUNCTIONS	93
LESSON LXII.—CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES	95
LESSON LXIII.—PARTICIPLES	96
Definitions; Distinctions of Tense; Used for a Subordinate Clause.	
LESSON LXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	98
LESSON LXV.—IRREGULAR VERBS: FERO	100
LESSON LXVI.—COMPOUNDS OF FERO.—ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	101
LESSON LXVII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>): VOLO AND ITS COMPOUNDS	103
LESSON LXVIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>): EO AND FIO	105
LESSON LXIX.—DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS	106
Infinitive as Subject.	
LESSON LXX.—THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.—DATIVE OF AGENT	108

LESSON LXXI.—USE OF THE DATIVE	110
Dative with Intransitive Verbs.	
LESSON LXXII.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE	112
Ablative with Comparatives.—Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command.	
LESSON LXXIII.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES	114
LESSON LXXIV.—USE OF THE DATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	116
Dative of the Person possessing; Two Datives.	
LESSON LXXV.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES	118
LESSON LXXVI.—USE OF THE GENITIVE	120
Genitive with Adjectives; Genitive in Predicate; Genitive with certain Verbs.	
LESSON LXXVII.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	122
LESSON LXXVIII.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE	124
Ablative expressing Measure of Difference; Ablative of Quality.	
LESSON LXXIX.—CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	126
LESSON LXXX.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE (<i>continued</i>)	128
Ablative of Price; Ablative of Distance; Ablative with Adjectives.	
LESSON LXXXI.—CAUSAL CLAUSES	130
LESSON LXXXII.—TEMPORAL CLAUSES	132
LESSON LXXXIII.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS	134
LESSON LXXXIV.—ORATIO OBliqua.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE	136
LESSON LXXXV.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>)	138
LESSON LXXXVI.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>)	139
LESSON LXXXVII.—THE GERUND	140
LESSON LXXXVIII.—THE GERUNDIVE	142
LESSON LXXXIX.—THE SUPINE	144
LESSON XC.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.—ABBREVIATIONS	146
LESSON XCI.—GENERAL EXERCISE	148
LESSON XCII.—GENERAL EXERCISE	150
SELECTIONS FOR READING.	
I. FABLES	153
II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY	156
GENERAL VOCABULARY.	
I. LATIN-ENGLISH	167
II. ENGLISH-LATIN	211

**TABLE showing the Changes made in Moods and Tenses when
Direct Discourse becomes Indirect.**

I. Moods.

1. Principal Clauses : Statements.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
<i>Indicative</i>	becomes <i>Infinitive</i> .

<i>Active Subjunctive</i> in the apod- osis of a conditional sentence	becomes	<i>Future Active Participle</i> with <i>esse</i> or <i>fuisse</i> .
<i>Passive Subjunctive</i> in the apod- osis of a conditional sentence		

2. Principal Clauses : Questions.

<i>Indicative</i> , 1st or 3d person, . . .	becomes	<i>Infinitive</i> .
---	---------	---------------------

<i>Indicative</i> , 2d person, . . .	becomes	<i>Subjunctive</i> .
--------------------------------------	---------	----------------------

<i>Subjunctive</i>	remains	<i>Subjunctive</i> .
------------------------------	---------	----------------------

3. Principal Clauses : Commands or Prohibitions.

<i>Imperative</i>	becomes	<i>Subjunctive</i> .
-----------------------------	---------	----------------------

<i>Subjunctive</i>	remains	<i>Subjunctive</i> .
------------------------------	---------	----------------------

4. Subordinate Clauses of All Kinds.

<i>Indicative</i>	becomes	<i>Subjunctive</i> .
-----------------------------	---------	----------------------

<i>Subjunctive</i>	remains	<i>Subjunctive</i> .
------------------------------	---------	----------------------

II. Tenses.

1. When an Indicative or a Subjunctive of Direct Discourse passes into a Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse.

<i>Present</i> }	become	<i>Present</i> , often <i>Imperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Imperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Present</i> , when made dependent upon an Historical Tense.
<i>Future</i> }		

<i>Perfect</i> }	become	<i>Perfect</i> , often <i>Pluperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Pluperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Perfect</i> , after an Historical Tense.
<i>Future-Perfect</i> }		

<i>Imperfect</i>	remains	<i>Imperfect</i> .
----------------------------	---------	--------------------

<i>Pluperfect</i>	remains	<i>Pluperfect</i> .
-----------------------------	---------	---------------------

2. When an Indicative of Direct Discourse passes into an Infinitive of Indirect Discourse.

<i>Present</i>	remains	<i>Present</i> .
--------------------------	---------	------------------

<i>Future</i> or <i>Future-Perfect</i>	becomes	<i>Future Participle</i> with <i>esse</i> .
--	---------	---

<i>Perfect</i> }	become	<i>Perfect</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> }		

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	indecl., indeclinable.
A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, revised edition.	indef., indefinite.
abl., ablative.	interrog., interrogative.
acc., accusative.	lit., literal, literally.
act., active.	LN., Lesson.
adj., adjective.	m., masculine.
B., Bartholomew's Latin Grammar.	n., neuter.
B. & M., Bullions and Morris's Latin Grammar.	num., numeral.
C., Chase's Latin Grammar.	part., participle.
cf., <i>confer</i> , compare.	pass., passive.
comp., comparative.	perf., perfect.
conj., conjunction.	pers., person.
dat., dative.	pl., plural.
dem., demonstrative.	poss., possessive.
dep., deponent.	prep., preposition.
Ex., Example.	pres., present.
f., feminine.	pron., pronoun.
fr., from.	Ref., Reference.
G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.	rel., relative.
gen., genitive.	sc., <i>scilicet</i> , understand.
H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, revised edition of 1881.	sing., singular.
ind., indicative.	subst., substantive.
	voc., vocative.
	VY., Vocabulary.
	w., with.

N. B.—The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (*4*) refer to such sections.

References to the revised edition of Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar are now given in the body of the book.

The references to the Grammars of Harkness, Gildersleeve, Allen and Greenough, and Andrews and Stoddard, have been adapted to the latest editions, and references to Chase and Stuart's Latin Grammar have been added.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included: e. g. 2-4 or *a-c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. 1, *a*; 2; 3: A. & S. 3-7; 9-12: B. 3-10, *w. fine print under 6 and 7*: B. & M. 3; 5; 7: G. 1; 2; 6: H. 2-4, *w. fine print under 3 and 4*: C. 1, 2.

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (a) *Roman Method.* A. & G. 14, *a-d*; 16: A. & S. 15-22: B. 11-15; 16-21: G. 3; 4; 7; 8; 9: H. 5-8: C. 3, I.; 4; 5.

(b) *English Methcd.* A. & G. 17, *a-c*, and *NOTE*: B. 377, *the whole*: B. & M. 11; 12; 13, 1-6: H. 9-14, *w. fine print*: C. 3, II.; 5.

(c) *Continental Method.* B. & M. 14, 1-5; 13, 1-6: H. 15: C. 3, III.; 5.

3. Quantity. A. & G. 18, *a-f*; 5, *fine print*: A. & S. 26-29; 37 *NOTE 1*: 38-44: B. 12, *a-c*: B. & M. 8; 16-19: G. 2, 2; 10-13, *REMARK 1*: H. 16, I.-III., and *NOTES 2-4*: C. 7; 8.

4. Accent. A. & G. 19, *a-c*, *w. Def.*: A. & S. 25 *NOTE 1*; 30-35: B. 22-25: B. & M. 20, *w. fine print*: G. 14: H. 17; 18: C. 9; 11.

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. 20; 21; 25, *a-i*; 26; 27: A. & S. 54; 55; 73; 74: B. 26-33; 34-40; 115: B. & M. 24; 25, 1, 2; 26, 1, 2, *Obs. 1-2*; 27-30: G. 15-17, *the whole*: H. 37-40: C. 12.

6. Gender. A. & G. 28, *a, b*; 29; 30: A. & S. 78-83: B. 116-118, I.-III.: B. & M. 32-35: G. 18; 19, I.-III.; 20, 1-3: H. 41; 42, I., II.: C. 13.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 31, *a-g*, Note, *h*: A. & S. 85-88, *a*; B. 119-120, *w. fine print*: B. & M. 31, 42, 4. Case; 43, *w. fine print*: G. 21-24: H. 44; 45, *w. fine print*: C. 14.

8. Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *b*: B. 121; 122, REM. 1-5; 123: B. & M. 44-46, *w. fine print*; 47; 50, Dec. I.: G. 25-26, *the whole*: H. 46, *w. fine print*; 47, with NOTE 3: C. 15; 17.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He may find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "**1. Alphabet**," he should turn to "**LESSON I.**" and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "**2.**" he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "**2.**" and divide the words which they form into syllables. **Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.**

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. NOTE, 35 ; 36, c: A. & S. 91-93: B. 121; 123; 124: B. & M. 46; 48, *First*; 51; 53: G. 24; 27, REMARK 2; 28: H. 46, 1; 48, 1, 2, 4: C. 19; 18, I.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent. Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causă, ae, ¹ f. ²	<i>cause, reason.</i>
Gěnăvă, ae, f.	<i>Geneva.³</i>
glōriă, ae, f.	<i>glory.</i>
linguă, ae, f.	<i>tongue, language.</i>
měmoriă, ae, f.	<i>memory.</i>
rīpă, ae, f.	<i>bank (of a stream).</i>
viă, ae, f.	<i>way, road.</i>

¹ ae is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of causă, substitute ae for final ă: e. g. Nom. causă, Gen. causae.

² In the Vocabularies, f. stands for *feminine gender*, m. for *masculine*, and n. for *neuter*.

³ For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

N. B. Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented*.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe¹ each word.

1. Causă.²
2. Glōriārūm.³
3. Rīpae.
4. Linguā.⁴
5. Měmōriā.⁵
6. Lingūas.
7. Viā.
8. Rīpās.
9. Měmōriae.
10. Glōriae.
11. Causās.
12. Viām.
13. Měmōriās.
14. Viā.
15. Glōriām.
16. Linguārūm.
17. Causīs.
18. Rīpā.
19. Gēnāvae.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Of a² cause.
2. Of the causes.
3. With glory.
4. For glory.
5. With tongues.
6. In the language.
7. O Memory.
8. In memory.
9. Of the banks.
10. By the way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

² The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, *a*, *an*, or *the* may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. *causă* may be rendered *a cause*, *the cause*, or simply *cause*.

³ Which syllable of *glōriārūm* is accented? Why? (4) — *Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.*

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *linguā*? Why? (3)

⁵ The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun: e. g. *měmōriā*, *in memory*; *linguā*, *in the language*.

⁶ Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun: e. g. *Rōmae*, *at Rome*, or *in Rome*.



LESSON II.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of deă and filiă. A. & G. 36, e: A. & S. 93 e: B. 124, REM 1: B. & M. 57: G. 27, REMARK 3: H. 49, 4: C. 19, 6.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. 260 : A. & S. 428 : B. 329,
RULE LXXX. : B. & M. 981 : G. 417 : H. 432 : C. 131.

VOCABULARY.

ăd, prep. w. acc. ¹	to.
angustiae, ² ārum, f.	narrow pass.
circūm, prep. w. acc.	around.
deă, ae, f.	goddess.
filiă, ae, f.	daughter.
Matrōnă, ae, m.	the Marne.
pěr, prep. w. acc.	through.
prōvinciă, ae, f.	province.
silvă, ae, f.	forest.
trans, prep. w. acc.	across.

¹ "prep. w. acc." signifies that ăd is a preposition used with the Accusative.

² angustiae is rarely used in the singular. Notice that it is equivalent to two English words, *narrow*, an adjective, and *pass*, a noun.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad rīpām.¹
2. Ad rīpām Matrōnae.²
3. Trans Matrōnām.
4. Deă.³
5. Deae.
6. Deārūm.
7. Deābūs.
8. Trans viām.
9. Pěr angustiās.⁴
10. Pěr silvās.
11. Pěr prōvinciām.
12. Circūm Gēnāvām.
13. Silvārūm.
14. In silvīs.⁵
15. Ad filiās deārūm.

Write in Latin.

1. The daughter.
2. A daughter.
3. O daughter.
4. To the daughter of a goddess.
5. To⁶ the Marne.
6. To⁶ the banks of the Marne.
7. For the daughters.
8. Through the provinces.
9. Through the forest.
10. In⁵ the forest.
11. In⁷ the memory of the daughters.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 When a noun is governed by a preposition, give the rule referred to under 12.

2 Give the rule for gender of **Matrōnā**. (6)

3 See LN. I., NOTE 2.

4 What is the quantity of the penult of **angustias**? Why? (3) Which syllable then has the accent? (4)

5 See LN. V., 19 and VY. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between **silvā** and **silvā**? In Latin the prep. *in* usually precedes the place *where*.

6 Translate by the proper preposition.

7 See LN. I., NOTE 5.



LESSON III.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in ūs. A. & G. 38, servūs ; 40, *a* : A. & S. 95, dōmīnūs ; 97 (3) : B. 126 ; 127, dōmīnūs, REM. 4 : B. & M. 59 ; 61, dōmīnūs : G. 29, hortūs, REMARK 4 : H. 51, servūs, 1, 2, 1)-3), 8 : C. 21 (dōmīnūs), 1 ; 18, II.

14. Gender. A. & G. 39 : A. & S. 95 : B. 127, REM. 3 : B. & M. 71 : G. 30 : H. 51 : C. 21 ; 24.

VOCABULARY.

antē , prep. w. acc.	<i>before.</i>
amicitiā , ae, f.	<i>friendship.</i>
amicūs , ī, m.	<i>friend.</i>
carrūs , ī, m.	<i>cart, wagon.</i>
contrā , prep. w. acc.	<i>against.</i>
Germānī , őrūm, m.	<i>the Germans.</i>
lēgātūs , ī, m.	<i>legate, lieutenant.</i>
nūmērūs , ī, m.	<i>number.</i>
őcūlūs , ī, m.	<i>eye.</i>
pōpūlūs , ī, m.	<i>people.</i>
Rhēnūs , ī, m.	<i>the Rhine.</i>
Rhōdānūs , ī, m.	<i>the Rhone.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Pōpūlī.¹ 2. Pōpūlē. 3. Pōpūlīs. 4. Amicitiā pōpūlī.
5. Antē őcūlōs pōpūlī. 6. Nūmērūs carrōrūm. 7. Nūmē-

rūs Germānōrūm. 8. Nūmērūs āmīcōrūm. 9. Nūmērūs
filiārūm. 10. Filiā lēgātī.² 11. Amīcō pōpūlī. 12. Contrā
āmīcūm pōpūlī. 13. Contrā lēgātōs pōpūlī. 14. Trans
Rhōdānūm. 15. Pōpūlī³ āmīcīs. 16. Ad Germānōs.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a friend.
2. To a friend.
3. O friend.
4. Against a friend.
5. Of friends.
6. The friends of the Germans.
7. Against the friends of the Germans.
8. Before the eyes of the Germans.
9. Across the Rhine.
10. Before the lieutenant's² eyes.
11. The friendship of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

1 What is the stem of **pōpūlī**? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (**14**) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (**6**)

2 The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case: **filiā lēgātī** is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter*.

3 The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., **filiā āmīci**, *the friend's daughter*; but **āmīci filiā**, *the FRIEND's daughter*.

LESSON IV.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in r and um. A. & G. 38: A. & S. 95: B. 127, a, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. 60; 61; 63: G. 29; 31: H. 51, 2, 3)-6), 4, 1): C. 21, 1, 2; 22.

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. 152, b: A. & S. 430: B. 178: B. & M. 470: G. 418: H. 434: C. 186.

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, āb,¹	prep. w. abl.	<i>from, by.</i>
āgēr, āgrī,	m.	<i>field, territory.</i>
bellūm, ī,	n.	<i>war.</i>
cūm,	prep. w. abl.	<i>with.</i>
ē, ex,¹	prep. w. abl.	<i>out of.</i>
frūmentūm, ī,	n.	<i>corn.</i>
gēnēr, gēnērī,	m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
Helvētiī, ūrum,	m.	<i>the Helvetii.</i>
puēr, puērī,	m.	<i>boy.</i>
regnūm, ī,	n.	<i>sovereignty, kingdom.</i>
sīnē,	prep. w. abl.	<i>without.</i>
tēmplūm, ī,	n.	<i>temple.</i>
vīr, vīrī,	m.	<i>man.</i>

¹ **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **āb** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse¹ the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Puērī,² puērōrūm.
2. Gēnērō, gēnērīs.
3. Agrī Helvētiōrūm.
4. Cūm vīrīs.
5. Sīnē vīrīs.
6. Ex templō.³
7. Cūm Helvētiīs.
8. Sīnē regnō.
9. Sīnē frūmentō.⁴
10. Bellūm cūm Germānīs.
11. Ex prōvinciā.
12. Ab Helvētiīs.
13. Pēr agrōs Helvētiōrūm.
14. E Rhōdānō.⁵
15. Cūm āmīcō Helvētiōrūm.
16. Regnūm Germānōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the war, of the wars.
2. For the war, for the wars.
3. The wars with the Helvetii.
4. By the Germans.
5. Without friendship.
6. With the man's⁶ daughters.
7. Without the boys.
8. O boys.
9. Before the war with the Germans.
10. Without wagons.
11. Out of the Rhine.
12. Out of the temples of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Form for parsing a noun.—**cūm vīrīs:** **vīrīs** = masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, **vīro**; declined, **vīr, vīrī, vīrō, vīrām, vīrīm, vīrō;**

plural, *vīrī*, *vīrōrūm*, *vīris*, *vīrōs*, *vīrī*, *vīris*; it is in the Ablative plural and governed by the preposition *cūm*; rule (16). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

2 Which endings do nouns in **r** drop? Ans. The Nominative **ūs** and the Vocative **ē**. To which declension does *pūeri* belong? Why? *prōvinciā*? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (8)

3 Notice that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of neuter nouns are alike and end in the plural in **ă**.

4 What is the quantity of the penult of *frūmentō*? Why? Which syllable then is accented? (3 and 4)

5 Which syllable of *Rhōdānūs* takes the accent?

6 See LN. III., NOTE 2.



LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in **iūs** or **iūm** generally form the Genitive Singular with one **i**, while the accent remains unchanged: *Cassī*, of *Cassius*; *fili*, of the son; *consili*, of counsel.

18. *Vocative of filiūs and proper names in iūs.* A. & G. 40, c: A. & S. 97 (5): B. 128, a: B. & M. 65: G. 29, 2: H. 51, 5: C. 23, 3.

19. *Use of īn and sūb.* A. & G. 152, c: A. & S. 431: B. 179: B. & M. 987; 988: G. 419: H. 435, I.: C. 131, 3.

20. *deūs* — stem *DEO* — is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>deūs</i> ,	<i>deī</i> , <i>diī</i> , <i>dī</i> .
Gen. <i>deī</i> ,	<i>deōrūm</i> , <i>deūm</i> .
Dat. <i>deō</i> ,	<i>deīs</i> , <i>diīs</i> , <i>dīs</i> .
Acc. <i>deūm</i> ,	<i>deōs</i> .
Voc. <i>deūs</i> ,	<i>deī</i> , <i>diī</i> , <i>dī</i> .
Abl. <i>deō</i> ,	<i>deīs</i> , <i>diīs</i> , <i>dīs</i> .

VOCABULARY.

<i>Cassiūs</i> , ī , m.	<i>Cassius.</i>
<i>castrūm</i> , ī , n.	<i>fort</i> ; pl. <i>camp</i> .

conciliūm, ī, n.	<i>council, assembly.</i>
consiliūm, ī, n.	<i>counsel, plan.</i>
deūs, ī, m. (see 20),	<i>god.</i>
ēquūs, ī, m.	<i>horse.</i>
ēt, conj.	<i>and.</i>
filiūs, ī, m.	<i>son.</i>
īn, prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>into, in.</i>
jūgūm, ī, n.	<i>yoke.</i>
Lūciūs, ī, m.	<i>Lucius.</i>
oppidūm, ī, n.	<i>town.</i>
sūb, prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>under.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Ad deōs ēt¹ deās.
2. Cūm deīs ēt deābūs.
3. Antě
ōcūlōs deōrūm ēt deārūm.
4. In² oppidō.
5. In² oppidūm.
6. In castrā³ Germānōrūm.
7. Consiliō⁴ deōrūm.
8. Sīnē consiliīs.
9. In conciliō Helvētiōrūm.
10. Sūb jūgūm.
11. Cūm ēquīs ēt carrīs.
12. Cūm ēquīs ēt carrīs Lūci.
13. Filiūs Lūci Cassī.
14. Fili⁵ Lūci Cassī.
15. Pér op-pidā Germānōrūm.⁶
16. Germānōrūm⁶ oppidā.
17. Trans Rhēnūm ēt Rhōdānūm.
18. Gēnēr Lūci.
19. Cassī.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. To sons and daughters.
2. With sons and daughters.
3. Before the eyes of sons and daughters.
4. Into² the towns of the Germans.
5. In² the Germans' camp.³
6. Into the council of the Germans.
7. By the plans of the gods.
8. O son⁵ of Cassius.
9. O Cassius.⁵
10. Under the yoke.

Notes and Questions.

1 ēt is a conjunction ; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. ēt connects similar constructions ; hence deās is governed the same as deōs by ād.

2 Observe carefully the difference in meaning between īn used with the Accusative and īn used with the Ablative.

3 Observe that castrūm means in the Singular a fort, but in the Plural a camp (military camp) ; a Roman camp was surrounded by a trench and a rampart.

⁴ See 17.

⁵ See 18 and A. & G. 241: A. & S. 402: B. 210, RULE VI.: B. & M. 974: G. 194, REM. 3: H. 369: C. 120, 2.

⁶ What is the difference between *oppīdā Germānōrūm* and *Germānōrūm oppīdā?* LN. III., NOTE 3.

LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. Learn the declension of bōnūs (cārūs). A. & G. 81: A. & S. 143: B. 154; 155, 1: B. & M. 189; 190, 1: G. 15, I., 2; 33: H. 146–148: C. 39.

22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. 186: A. & S. 332: B. 266, RULE LI.: B. & M. 650: G. 285: H. 438: C. 113, 1.

VOCABULARY.

bōnūs, ā, ¹ ūm, ¹	good.
cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear, beloved.
exemplūm, ī, n.	example.
lacrīmā, ae, f.	tear.
magnūs, ā, ūm,	great, big, large.
mălūs, ā, ūm,	bad.
multūs, ā, ūm,	much; pl. many.
parvūs, ā, ūm,	small.
rēliquūs, ā, ūm,	remaining.
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman.

¹ ā and ūm are the feminine and neuter endings: recite as if it were printed bōnūs, bōnā, bōnūm.

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.¹

1. Vīr bōnūs,¹ filiā bōnā,² exemplūm bōnūm.
2. Vīrī mălī, filiae³ mălae, exemplă mălă.
3. Cūm filiā cārā.
4. Cūm filiis⁴ cārīs.
5. Glōriā magnā Lūcī Cassī.⁴
6. Exemplō pōpūlī Rōmānī.
7. Multīs cūm lacrīmīs.
8. Puērī

multī ēt parvī.⁵ 9. Opp̄dā multā ēt magnā. 10. Pēr multōs agrōs. 11. In rēlīquā opp̄dā. 12. Amīcūs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 13. Cūm amīcīs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 14. In prōvinciām magnām. 15. Carrī multī ēt parvī. 16. In templīs magnīs Germānōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. Through small⁶ fields.
2. Through small towns.
3. Through a small province.
4. Through the remaining towns.
5. The friendship of the Roman⁷ people.
6. Many good boys.⁵
7. Many beloved daughters.
8. Many bad men.
9. In a large temple.
10. With many friends.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing an adjective.* — **vīr bōnūs** : **bōnūs** is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions ; Stems, **BŌNO** and **BŌNA** ; declined, **bōnūs**, **bōnā**, **bōnūm** ; **bōnī**, **bōnac**, **bōnī**; **bōnō**, **bōnae**, **bōnō**; **bōnūm**, **bōnām**, **bōnūm**; **bōnē**, **bōnā**, **bōnūm**; **bōnō**, **bōnā**, **bōnō**; Plural, **bōnī**, **bōnac**, **bōnā**; **bōnōrūm**, **bōnārūm**, **bōnōrūm**; **bōnīs**, **bōnīs**, **bōnīs**; **bōnōs**, **bōnās**, **bōnā**; **bōnī**, **bōnae**, **bōnā**; **bōnīs**, **bōnīs**, **bōnīs**; it is in the Nominative Singular Masculine to agree with its noun **vīr** ; rule (22). Repeat the rule.

² The adjective like the Genitive follows its noun unless emphatic.

³ What irregularity in declension have **deā** and **filiā** ?

⁴ What irregularities in declension have **filiūs** and **Cassiūs** ? (17 and 18)

⁵ The Romans wrote **multī ēt parvī**, *many AND small* ; the English write *many small*, without the conjunction.

⁶ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its noun (see 22).

⁷ In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people*, the adjective always follows its noun.



LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. 82 : A. & S. 143 : B. 155, 2, 3 : B. & M. 190, 2, 3 : G. 34 : H. 149, 150 : C. 39.

24. Genitive in iūs and Dative in ī. A. & G. 83, a : A. & S. 145 ; 146 : B. 155, 4, REM. 1 : B. & M. 191 : G. 35, REMARK : H. 155, 1 : C. 41.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in **ius** and Dative in **i** should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

aēgēr, aegrā, aegrūm,	sick.
āliūs, āliā, āliūd,	other, another.
lībēr, lībērā, lībērūm,	free.
mīsēr, mīsērā, mīsērūm,	wretched.
nullūs, ā, ūm,	none, no.
pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,	beautiful.
sōlūs, ā, ūm,	alone.
tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm,	tender, delicate.
tōtūs, ā, ūm,	whole, entire.
ullūs, ā, ūm,	any.
ūnūs, ā, ūm,	one.

Pronounce ; translate ; parse the adjectives.

1. Cūm filiūs tēnērīs.
2. Ad vīrōs aegrōs.¹
3. Ad āliōs vīrōs aegrōs.
4. Pēr agrōs pulchrōs.
5. Ab Helvētiūs lībērīs.
6. Contrā lēgātūm mīsērūm.
7. Filiae multae ēt pulchrae.²
8. Filiārūm pulchrārūm.
9. Filiūs ēt filiābūs pulchrīs.
10. Vīrī multī ēt mīsērī.
11. Tōtīs castrīs.³
12. Pēr Helvētiōs sōlōs.
13. Unā pēr Helvētiōs viā.
14. Aliā⁴ viā nullā.
15. Ullā sīnē causā.
16. Aliī āmīcō.
17. Aliī āmīcī.
18. Alius āmīcī.
19. Unūs ē filiūs⁵ Cassī.
20. In⁶ āliūd⁷ oppidūm.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How does **filiūs Cassī** differ from **Cassī filiūs** ? (LN. III., NOTE 3). How does **ad viros aegros** differ from **ād aegros vīros** ? (LN. VI., NOTE 2).

² See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

³ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of **āliūs** ? The Genitive Singular ? The Dative Singular ?

⁵ Translate **ūnūs ē filiūs** as if it read **ūnūs filiōrūm**.

⁶ How is **in** to be rendered when used with the Ablative ?

⁷ What adjectives have their Genitive in **ius** and Dative in **i** ?

LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. 183 : A. & S. 324 : B. 265, RULE L. : B. & M. 622 : G. 318 ; 319 : H. 359, NOTE 2 ; 363 : C. 112.

EXAMPLES.

1. **ād oppidūm Gēnāvām** (appositive), *to the town of Geneva.*
2. **Tītūs Lābiēnūs lēgātūs** (appositive), *Titus Labienus the lieutenant.*

VOCABULARY.

aedificiūm, i, n.	<i>building, edifice.</i>
armā, ¹ ūrūm, n.	<i>arms, weapons.</i>
Belgae, ārūm, m.	<i>the Belgae.</i>
cōpiā, ae, f.	<i>plenty; pl. troops.</i>
Galliā, ae, f.	<i>Gaul.</i>
Lābiēnūs, i, m.	<i>Labienus.</i>
lōcūs, ² i, m.	<i>place.</i>
mātūrūs, a, um,	<i>ripe.</i>
pērīcūlūm, i, n.	<i>danger.</i>
prīvātūs, a, um,	<i>private.</i>
Sēquānī, ūrūm, m.	<i>the Sequani.</i>
Tītūs, i, m.	<i>Titus.</i>
victōriā, ae, f.	<i>victory.</i>

¹ armā, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

² lōcūs is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows: Nom., lōci and lōcā; Gen., lōcōrūm; Dat., lōcis; Acc., lōcōs and lōcā; Voc., lōci and lōcā; Abl., lōcis.

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns which are in apposition or governed by prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. Ad Tītūm¹ Lābiēnūm lēgātūm.⁷
2. Cūm filiābūs² pulchrīs Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī.
3. Pēr agrōs magnōs Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī.
4. Ex oppidō Gēnāvā.⁸
5. In oppidūm Gēnāvām.
6. Magnō cūm pērīcūlō.
7. Rēlīquā prīvātā aedificiā.
8. Frūmentūm mātūrūm ūn agrīs.
9. Cōpiā frūmentī mātūrī

in agrīs. 10. In Galliām, in Galliā. 11. Ex⁴ Galliā, ā⁴ Galliā. 12. Victōriā magnā Sēquānōrūm. 13. Cūm cōpiīs Belgārūm. 14. Trans Rhōdānūm⁵ īn Galliām. 15. Pēr multā lōcā. 16. Pērīcūlūm deōrūm ēt deārūm. 17. Nullā victōriā sīnē armīs.

Write in Latin.

1. Through the entire town.
2. Through the entire town of Geneva.³
3. Into the province of Gaul.
4. With the troops of Titus Labienus the lieutenant.
5. The remaining private wagons.
6. Into no place.
7. In one place.
8. With many dangers.
9. With many sons and daughters.
10. The Sequani alone.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the general rules for gender? (**6**) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (**9**) Of the Second Declension? (**14**)

² What irregular case-endings have **deā** and **filiā**? (**11**)

³ See **25** and EXAMPLE 1.

⁴ **ē**, **ex** signifies *out of*, *from*, in the sense of *from within* a place; **ā**, **āb**, *from*, in the sense of *from near* a place.

⁵ Which syllable of **Rhōdānūs** takes the accent? Why? (**4**) Which of **Sēquāni**?

⁶ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used **only** with the Ablative? Which with **both** the Ablative and Accusative? When are **īn** and **sūb** used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative? (**16, 19**)

⁷ See A. & G. **184**.



LESSON IX.

VERBS : PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. 108, *a-d*; 111; 121; 122, *a*; 264; 276. *L*

A. & S. 190-193; 198 (1); 201; 208; 217, *a, b*; 461.

B. 26; 41, *b*; 43; 44; 57; 63; 68; 292, RULE LVI.

B. & M. 258; 259, 1-3; 262; 266; 270; 271; 272; 1079;
1080.

G. 15, III.; 109; 204; 245; 246; 218; 116; 117.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 201.

C. 64; 188; 66, 1, or 189.

LESSON X.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.

A. & G. 21; 116, SING., PLUR.: A. & S. 55; 209; 213 (1): B. 64, *a*; 69: B. & M. 333, ACTIVE VOICE; 274: G. 111: H. 247, PERSON., ACT., MEANING; 250: C. pp. 102, 104.

28. The Present Stem¹ is found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending *rē* in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and *erē* in the Third: e. g. *PUTĀrē* is a Present Infinitive Active and *PUTA* its Present Stem; so *DIC* from *DICERĒ*.

29. Learn the *conjugation²* and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of *āmō*. A. & G. 128: A. & S. 222: B. 74: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 1: C. 74.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (**27**) to the Present Stem (**28**); also that the *first person singular* takes the termination *ō*, which absorbs the final stem-vowel *a*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>āmō, āmārē,</i>	<i>love.³</i>
<i>convōcō, convōcārē,</i>	<i>call together, summon.</i>
<i>confirmō, confirmārē,</i>	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
<i>importō, importārē,</i>	<i>bring in, import.</i>
<i>occūpō, occūpārē,</i>	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
<i>vastō, vastārē,</i>	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>

Pronounce; translate; inflect the verbs and give their elements.⁴

1. Importās,⁵ importātīs, importāmūs.
2. Amāmūs, āmant, āmāt.
3. Convōcō, convōcās, convōcāt.
4. Convōcāmūs, convōcātīs, convōcānt.
5. Confirmāt, confirmātīs, confirmāmūs.
6. Confirmāt, confirmās, confirmō.
7. Occūpō, āmās, importāt.
8. Importō, āmātīs, occūpānt.
9. Occūpāmūs, importātīs, āmō.
10. Occūpās, occūpāt, occūpātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving.
2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate.
3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon.
4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates.
5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

1 The Present Stem is named *The First Stem* in some grammars; in others, *The First Root*.

2 The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

3 Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with aid of the grammar.

4 The elements of a verb in the present tense are *the stem* and *personal ending*: e. g. āmāmūs has the stem āmā, signifying *love*, and the personal ending mūs, signifying *we*.

5 importās may be rendered *you are importing, you do import, or you import*; translate each verb the three ways.

6 What is the Present Stem of pūtarē? What does the personal ending nt signify? mūs? s? tīs? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (28)

LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. 171; 172; 180; 181: A. & S. 309-311: B. 203,
a-g: B. & M. 616, 1, 4-10; 618-620: G. 192; 193: H. 346;
 347; 350; 356, 1, 2; 358; 360: C. 107; 108; 108, 1, 2, 3, 6.

32. Subject Nominative. A. & G. 173: A. & S. 316: B. 205,
 RULE I.: B. & M. 633: G. 194: H. 368: C. 109.

33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. 204: A. & S. 316: B. 287,
 RULE LV.: B. & M. 634: G. 202: H. 460: C. 110, 1.

34. Direct Object. A. & G. 237: A. & S. 392: B. 212,
 RULE VII.: B. & M. 712: G. 329: H. 371: C. 121, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Puēr** (subject) **ămăt** (predicate), *the boy loves.*
2. **Titūs conciliūm**¹ (direct object) **convōcāt**, *Titus summons a council.*

VOCABULARY.

dē , prep. w. abl.,	<i>down from, concerning, for.</i>
expugnō , expugnārē ,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
Gallūs , ī , m.	<i>a Gaul.</i>
impériūm , ī , n.	<i>empire, supreme power.</i>
pugnō , pugnārē ,	<i>fight, contend.</i>
Rōmānūs , ī , m.	<i>a Roman.</i>
servūs , ī , m.	<i>slave.</i>
vexō , vexārē ,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassiūs² oppidūm³ expugnāt.⁴ 2. Helvētiī oppidūm
 expugnant. 3. Gallī tōtūm⁵ oppidūm occūpant. 4. Gallī
 multā oppidā occūpant. 5. Sēquānī agrōs vastant. 6. Agrōs
 pulchrōs vastāmūs.⁶ 7. Agrōs magnōs vastās. 8. Cassiūs
 conciliūm⁷ convōcāt. 9. Germānī Gallōs vexant. 10. Rō-

mānī oppīdūm Gēnāvām⁸ expugnant. 11. Tītūs Lăbiēnūs lēgātūs oppīdūm occūpāt. 12. Rōmānī dē impēriō⁹ pugnant. 13. Dē impēriō pugnāmūs. 14. Dē impēriō pugnātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights.
2. The slaves are fighting.¹⁰
3. The Gauls are storming the town.¹
4. The Gauls storm many towns.
5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields.
6. The Gauls fight for empire.
7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva.
8. Cassius the legate summons a large council.
9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

² See 32 and LN. IV., Note 1.

³ See 34.

⁴ Why is *expugnāt* in the third person singular? (33)

⁵ See 24 and 22. Which adjectives have their Genitive in *tūs* and Dative in *i?*

⁶ The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence *vastāmūs* includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate: *devastate we.*
vastā - mūs.

⁷ See 17.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ See 16.

¹⁰ See LN. X., Note 5.



LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.—IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of *āmōd*. A. & G. 118 (*for endings*); 128 (*for conjugation*): A. & S. 222; 224 1, 2: B. 72, *Indicative*; 74: B. & M. 282: G. 111, 1-3; 119: H. 205; 247, 1; 243: C. p. 102 (*for endings*); p. 76 (*for conjugation*).

36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. A. & G. 277; 278: A. & S. 461; 464: B. 57: B. & M. 1087; 1090: G. 222; 234: H. 468; 470: C. 66, 2, 3.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, **ba** in the Imperfect and **bī** in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination **o**, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future **u** takes the place of **i**.

VOCABULARY.

Aquīlēiā, ae, f.	<i>Aquileia.</i>
Aquitāniā, ae, f.	<i>Aquitania.</i>
Aquitānī, ōrūm, m.	<i>the Aquitani.</i>
circūm, prep. w. acc.	<i>around, near.</i>
Helvētiūs, ā, ūm,	<i>of the Helvetii.</i>
hiěmō, hiěmārē,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
sūpěrō, sūpěrārē,	<i>overcome.</i>

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.¹

1. Titus regnum occūpāt.
2. Titus regnum occūpābāt.
3. Titus regnum occūpābāt.
4. Regnum occūpābāmūs.
5. Regnum occūpābīmūs.
6. Regnum occūpābō.
7. Cōpiae² circūm Aquilēiam³ hiěmābānt.
8. Aquitāni circūm Gēnāvam hiěmābānt.
9. Aquitānos sūpěrābīs.
10. Rōmāni Helvētios sūpěrābānt.
11. Galli multa lōca⁴ īn Aquitāniā⁵ occūpānt.
12. Multi Germāni agros Helvētios vastābānt.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall overcome.
2. You are storming, you were storming, you will storm.
3. Titus will storm the town.
4. Titus was storming the town.
5. Titus storms many towns.
6. The Romans will pass the winter near Aquileia.
7. The Aquitani are passing the winter near Geneva.
8. The Gauls were fighting for⁶ empire.
9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

1 The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are *the stem, tense-sign, personal ending*: e. g. *love will you* has the Stem *āmā*, *love*; the Future Tense-Sign *bī*, *will*; the Personal Ending *tis*, *you*.

2 What meaning has *cōpiae* in the Singular? Ln. VIII., Vy.

3 See **12**.

4 Decline *lōcā*. Ln. VIII., Vy., 2.

5 See **19**.

6 *For*, in the sense of *concerning, about*, is to be rendered by *dē*.

7 How is the Present Stem found? (28) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it—Present, Imperfect, Future—denote *incomplete action*.

LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. 178, *a, b*; 179: B. 288, *a*: B. & M. **1401**, I.—IV.; **1405**, II., 1—4: H. 357, 1; 359, Note 1; 361, 1: C. 108, 5.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 224: A. & S. 374, (2): B. 239, RULE XXVIII.: B. & M. **818**; **819**: G. 344: H. 384, I., II.: C. 149; 150.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 213: A. & S. 351: B. 226; 230, RULE XIX.: B. & M. **751**: G. 357; 358; 360: H. 395: C. 133.

EXAMPLES.

- Titus Lăbiēnus lēgātus consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt,**¹ *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*
- Cassius Tīto filiam ī mātrīmōnium dāt,**² *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ Of this sentence, **Titus Lăbiēnus** is *the subject* and is modified by *lēgātus*, *an appositive*; *consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt* is *the predicate* and is made up of *the verb ēnunciāt* and its *modifier consilia*, *a direct object*; *consilia* is modified by *Gallōrum*, *a genitive*. G. 284, I., II., REM.; 326, I., II.

² Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified ; **Tito filiam in mātrimōnium dāt** is the predicate, and is made up of the verb **dāt** and its modifiers, viz : **Tito**, an indirect object ; **filiām**, a direct object ; and in **mātrimōnium**, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dō, dārē,	<i>give.</i>
ēnunciō, ēnunciārē,	<i>report.</i>
mātrimōnium, i, n.	<i>marriage.</i>
in mātrimōnium dārē,	<i>to give in marriage.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze; ¹ conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² consilia Belgārum³ ēnunciābīt. 2. Rōmānis⁴ consilia Belgārum ēnunciābīt. 3. Tītus filiam īn⁵ mātrimōnium dābīt.⁶ 4. Lēgātō filiam īn mātrimōnium dābīt. 5. Lēgātis filias īn mātrimōnium dāmūs. 6. Helvētii multa lōca īn Aquītānia occūpant. 7. Cassius concilium Rōmānorū convōcāt. 8. Deos⁷ et deas⁸ īn templā convōcāt. 9. Rōmāni oppīda multa et magna⁹ expugnābant. 10. Amīcītiā cūm Helvētiis confirmant. 11. Tōtum¹⁰ oppīdum ullo¹⁰ sīnē pērīcūlo occūpābīt̄s. 12. Galli agros multos et pulchros⁹ īn Aquītānia vastābunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; SEE NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

² What is the Genitive and Vocative of **Cassius**? (**17** and **18**)

³ See **40**.

⁴ See **39**.

⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase*; when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase*; when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase*.

⁶ Observe that in **dō** the characteristic **a** is short; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

⁷ See **20**.

⁸ See **11**.

⁹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

¹⁰ See **24**.

LESSON XIV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of **āmō**. A. & G. 118; 128: A. & S. 210; 213 (2); 222; 224 (5): B. 75: B. & M. 282: G. 120: H. 205; 243, TENSE-SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF.; 247, 1, 2: C. p. 102; pp. 76, 77.

42. Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. A. & G. 280; 281: A. & S. 462 (2), (3): B. 57: B. & M. 1096; 1098: G. 233; 236: H. 472; 473: C. 194; 195.

43. What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? A. & G. 115, c; 279: A. & S. 462 (1): B. 60: B. & M. 1092; 1093: G. 226; 227; 231: H. 471, I., II.: C. 66, 4.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of **āmō**. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote *completed action*.

45. The Perfect Stem is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending **ī**: e. g. Perfect Indicative **VASTĀVī**, Perfect Stem **VASTĀV**.

VOCABULARY.

confirmō ,	confirmārē ,	confirmāvī ¹	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
convōcō ,	convōcārē ,	convōcāvī ,	<i>call together, summon.</i>
dō ,	dārē ,	dědī , ⁴	<i>give.</i>
expugnō ,	expugnārē ,	expugnāvī ,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
hiēmō ,	hiēmāre ,	hiēmāvī ,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
occūpō ,	occūpārē ,	occūpāvī ,	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
Rōmā , ae, f.			<i>Rome.</i>
sūpērō ,	sūpērārē ,	sūpērāvī ,	<i>overcome, subdue.</i>
vastō ,	vastārē ,	vastāvī ,	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>
vexō ,	vexārē ,	vexāvī ,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

¹ In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multos agros vastāvīt.²
2. Concilium Gallōrum convōcāvērō.³
3. Galli tōtum oppīdum occūpāvērant.
4. Helvētii castra occūpāvērint.
5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētium vastāvērunt.²
6. Amīcītiam cūm Rōmānis confirmāvērīt.
7. Cōpiae circūm Rōmam hiēmāvērē.²
8. Cassius Tīto filiam īn mātrīmōnium dēdīt.²
9. Rōmānī Helvētios vexāvērunt.²
10. Sēquāni Germānos sūpērāvērunt.²
11. Circūm Rōmam hiēmāvērant.
12. Oppīdum Aquīlēiam occūpāvī.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town.
2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town.
3. The Aquitani had stormed the town.
4. I have given a daughter in marriage.
5. I had given a daughter in marriage.
6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage.
7. I gave a daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius.
8. You have summoned a council of Romans.
9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular of each tense*: e. g. the synopsis of *vastāvīt* is *vastō*, *vastābām*, *vastābō*, *vastāvī*, *vastāvērām*, *vastāvērō*.

² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses: *Cassius vastāvīt*, *Cassius has laid waste*, and *Cassius laid waste*. (See 43)

³ Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote? (44) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote? (LN. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action is completed in what time? (42) The Future Perfect? The Present Tense denotes that an action is going on in what time? (26) The Imperfect Tense? (36) The Future Tense? Give the elements of each verb in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses: e. g. *loved had they* has the Perfect Stem *āmāv*, *loved*; the Pluperfect Tense-Sign *ěra*, *had*; the Personal Ending *nt*, *they*.

⁴ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6; observe that the *Perfect stem* of *dō* is *dēd*, not *dāv*.

LESSON XV.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of *āmō* and its meanings. A. & G. 128; 118, for personal endings: A. & S. 213 (3); 222: B. 74, a; 64, b, for pers. endings: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 3, for pers. endings: C. p. 77; p. 104 for pers. endings.

47. Use of the Imperative. A. & G. 269: A. & S. 527: B. 312, RULE LXXI.: B. & M. 1110: G. 259: H. 487: C. 247, 1, 2.

VOCABULARY.

āvūs, ī, m.	grandfather.
Divitiācūs, ī, m.	Divitiacus.
jūvōd, jūvārē, jūvī,	help, aid.
mātūrōd, mātūrārē, mātūrāvī,	make haste, hasten.
nātūrā, ae, f.	nature.
nunciōd, nunciārē, nunciāvī,	announce.
proeliūm, ī, n.	battle.
sōcēr, sōcērī, m.	father-in-law.
vītōd, vītārē, vītāvī,	avoid, shun.
vōcēr, vōcārē, vōcāvī,	call.

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

1. Jūvā,¹ mātūrā, nunciā.
2. Jūvātōd, mātūrātōd, nunciātōd.
3. Jūvātē, mātūrātē, nunciātē.
4. Vītā, Divitiācē,² proeliūm.
5. Vītā, O āvē,³ pērīcūlūm.
6. Dātē, vīrī, Rōmānīs⁴ armā.⁵
7. Vōcā, sōcēr, puērōs.
8. Mātūrā, Cassī,⁶ Tītō⁴ nunciārē.
9. Mātūrātē, vīrī, oppīdūm expugnārē.
10. Vastātē agrōs.
11. Vastātē multōs agrōs.
12. Vastātē tōtām prōvinciām.

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men.
2. Help the boys.
3. Shun the danger.
4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus.
5. Summon a council, Cassius.
6. Call the men, my grandfather.
7. Announce to Cassius.
8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus.
9. Men, give arms to the Belgae.
10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (**28**) ; that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem ; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

² See LN. V., NOTE 5.

³ O āvě, *O grandfather*, or *my grandfather*.

⁴ See **39**.

⁵ See LN. VIII., Vy.

⁶ See **18**.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson ? The Perfect Stem ? Which Stem is used in the Imperative ? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action ? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative ?



LESSON XVI.

VERBS : INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of āmō. A. & G. **118**; **128**, page 93; **289**: A. & S. **214**; **222**, page 108 : B. **51**; **53**, *a-d*; **65**; **66**; **72**; **74**, *a*; **75** : B. & M. **264**, IV.; **265**; **282**: G. **110**; **119**; **120** : H. **200**, I.-IV.; **205**; **248**, ACTIVE : C. p. 104; pp. 77, 78.

49. Principal Parts (Stem Forms). A. & G. **122**, *b* : A. & S. **220**, NOTE : B. **73** : B. & M. **275** : G. **118** : H. **202**; **203**; **220**, CONJ. I. : C. **69**.

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in ūm by dropping the ūm: e. g. CŪRĀTŪM is a Supine in ūm and CŪRĀT its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (**28**), the Perfect (**45**), and the Supine (**50**). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.¹

āmō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm, ²	love.
cūrō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm, ²	care for.
dō,	dārē, ³	dēdī,	dātūm, ³	give.
jūvō,	jūvārē,	jūvī,	jūtūm,	help, aid.

něgō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	deny.
pugnō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	fight.
vastō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	lay waste, devastate.
vexō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	disturb, harass.
vōcō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	call.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Principal Parts (**49**) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies ; these Parts should always be learned.

² Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like āmō. To form the Principal Parts let ārē, āvī, ātūm take the place of final ō in the Present Indicative Active : e. g. cūrō, cūrārē, cūrāvī, cūrātūm.

³ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice ? On which Stem is each formed ? Name the Infinitives of dō, cūrō, jūvō, and vastō. What is the Ending of each Infinitive ? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed ? What is the Ending of each Participle ? What is the Future Active Participle of dō, něgō, pugnō ? What is the Present Participle of each ? On which Stem is the Gerund formed ? Form and decline the Gerund of dō and cūrō. What are the Endings of the Supine ?



LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 272 : A. & S. 533 (1) : B. 315, f: B. & M. 1148 : G. 527 : H. 534 : C. 237.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 240, f: A. & S. 530 : B. 225, RULE XVI. : B. & M. 1136 : G. 526, second part : H. 536 : C. 109, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. Dicít Rōmānōs¹ oppīdūm² expugnārē,³ he says (that⁴) the Romans⁴ are storming⁴ the town.
2. Dicít Rōmānōs oppīdūm expugnāvissē, he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town ; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.

3. **Dicīt Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnātūrōs⁵ essē, he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town; or he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.**

Notes on the Examples.

¹ See 53.

² See 34.

³ The whole expression **Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnārē** is the Direct Object of **dicīt** (see 52).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive **expugnārē** is translated by the Indicative *are storming*; the Subject Accusative **Rōmānōs**, by the Subject Nominative *the Romans*; and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

Aeduī, ūrūm, m.	<i>the Aedui.</i>
Ariovistūs, ī, m.	<i>Ariovistus.</i>
dēmonstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,¹	<i>show, declare.</i>
dīcīt,	<i>he says.</i>
existīmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>think, suppose.</i>
nēgōd,	<i>deny.</i>
nunciōd,	<i>announce.</i>
pūtōd,	<i>think.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

1. **Dicīt² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexārē.³** 2. **Pūtāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexāvissē.** 3. **Nunciāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexātūrōs essē.** 4. **Existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpātūrūm essē.** 5. **Tītūs existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpāvissē.** 6. **Ariovistūs nunciāt Germānōs agrūm Helvētiūm vastātūrōs essē.** 7. **Dicīt Rōmānōs frūmentūm importārē.** 8. **Existīmāt Helvētiōs frūmentūm importātūrōs essē.** 9. **Dicīt Gallōs frūmentūm Rōmānīs⁴ dātūrōs essē.** 10. **Dicīt Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ armā dātūrōs essē**

Write in Latin.

1. He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii. 2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste

the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

¹ The verbs in this Vx. may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.

² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.

³ Form for parsing an Infinitive. — *vexārē* is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *vexō*, *vexārē*, *vexāri*, *vexātūm*; Stems, **VEXA** (28), **VEXĀV** (45), **VEXĀT** (50); Infinitives of the Active Voice, *vexārē*, *vexāvissē*, *vexātūrūs essē*; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject **Rōmānōs** is the Object of **dicit**; rule (see 52).

⁴ See 39.

⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.

LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 248, c 1: A. & S. 407: B. 258, RULE XLIII.: B. & M. 873: G. 403: H. 420: C. 166.

VOCABULARY.

animūs, ī, m.	<i>mind.</i>
conciliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>win, conciliate.</i>
confirmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>establish, encourage.</i>
intēr, prep. w. acc.	<i>between, among.</i>
Nōrēiā, ae, f.	<i>Noreia.</i>
oppugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>attack, besiege, assault.</i>
proptēr, prep. w. acc.	<i>on account of.</i>
Trēvīrī, ūrum, m.	<i>the Treviri.</i>
verbūm, ī, n.	<i>word.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Intēr² Sēquānos ēt Helvētios. 2. Proptēr² angustias.
3. Nōrēiam oppugnāmūs.³ 4. Nōrēiam oppugnābant. 5. Rōmāni Nōrēiam oppugnāvērunt.⁴ 6. Trēvīri Nōrēiam oppugnābunt. 7. Dīcīt Trēvīros⁵ Nōrēiam oppugnātūros⁶ essē.⁷
8. Nōrēiam oppugnātīs. 9. Nōrēiam oppugnātē.⁸ 10. Di-vitiācus Gallōrum anīmos verbis⁹ confirmāvīt. 11. Divitiācus Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmābīt. 12. Tītus pūtāt Divitiācum Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmātūrūm essē. 13. Cassius regnum conciliāvīt. 14. Cassius regnum cōpiis conciliābāt. 15. Cassius regnum cōpiis Divitiāco¹⁰ conciliābīt. 16. Nēgāt Cassium regnum cōpiis Divitiāco conciliātūrūm essē. 17. Tītus Divitiāco¹⁰ fīliam in mātrīmōnium¹¹ dēdīt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XIII., NOTE 5.

³ Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood. — *oppugnāmus* is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *oppugnō*, *oppugnārē*, *oppugnāvī*, *oppugnātūm*; it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is *ā*; Stems, *OPPUGNA*, *OPPUGNĀV*, *OPPUGNĀT*; Synopsis (LN. XIV., NOTE 1), *oppugnō*, *oppugnābām*, *oppugnābō*, *oppugnāvī*, *oppugnāvērām*, *oppugnāvēro*; conjugated, *oppugnō*, *oppugnās*, *oppugnāt*, *oppugnāmūs*, *oppugnātīs*, *oppugnānt*; it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (*nos*, *we*) understood; rule (33).

⁴ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See LN. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

⁷ See 52. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See LN. XVII., Example 3.

⁸ See 47. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present *Indicative*?

⁹ *verbis*, with words, or by means of words; it is a modifier (38) of *confirmāvīt*.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ See 19.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS.

55. Stem and Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *a, b*: B. 36; 121: B. & M. 44-47: G. 16; 25; 26: H. 46-47, *including fine print*.

56. A. & G. 48, *a-d*; 49, *w. declension of consūl, nōměn, hōnōr, leo, frātēr, virgō, corpūs*: A. & S. 103, *a-f*; 104, *decl. of consul, leo, virgo, nomen, pater*; 107, *honor*: B. 130; 135, *w. declension of consūl, virgō, leō, nōměn, āmōr, pātēr*: B. & M. 73-77; 90-97, *including the Paradigms*: G. 36-39; 40; 42; 43; 44-46; 47: H. 55; 56; 57, *Case-Suffixes*; 60, *Paradigms*, 1, 3, 4: C. 26, *declension of rēx, nōměn, leo, pātēr, virgō, corpūs*.

VOCABULARY.

accūso, āre, āvi, ātum,	accuse, censure.
Caesār, Caesāris, m.	Caesar.
consūl, consūlis, m.	consul.
citrā, prep. w. acc.	this side of.
flūměn, flūměnīs, n.	river.
frātēr, frātrīs, m.	brother.
hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	honor.
mātēr, mātrīs, f.	mother.
pātēr, pātrīs, m.	father.
Sēquānā, ae, m.	the Seine.
sōrōr, sōrōris, f.	sister.
uxōr, uxōris, f.	wife.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings; parse the verbs.

1. A¹ flūměnē Rhōdāno.² 2. E¹ flūměnē Rhōdāno. 3. Ad flūměn Sēquānam. 4. Citrā flūměn Rhēnum. 5. Pātēr sōrōrēm in mātrīmōniū dat. 6. Mātēr sōrōrēm in mātrīmōniū dābit. 7. Caesār sōrōrēm in mātrīmōniū dēdit. 8. Tītus dīcīt Caesārēm sōrōrēm in mātrīmōniū dēdisse. 9. Caesār uxōrēm accūsāvit. 10. Caesār consūl² Tītum lēgātum² accūsāvērat. 11. Nēgat Caesārēm consūlēm Tītum

lēgātūm accūsāvisse. 12. Caesārīs³ uxōrēm accūsābīmus.
13. Pātrēm et mātrēm et frātrēm accūsant.

Write in Latin.

1. To the river Rhone.
2. This side of the river Seine.
3. Across the river Rhine.
4. Caesar gives a sister in marriage.
5. Caesar has given to the consul a daughter in marriage.
6. He thinks (that) Caesar has given a daughter in marriage.
7. We shall accuse Caesar the consul.
8. Brothers accuse sisters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. IV., VY., and LN. VIII., NOTE 4.

² See 25.

³ See LN. III., NOTES 2 and 3.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of **flūmīnis** differ in form from the Nominative Singular?



LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

57. A. & G. 21; 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*; 44; 45, *a-c*; 46: A. & S. 55; 101, *a, c*; 102; 104, decl. of **caput**: B. 130-134, including the Paradigms: B. & M. all of 86-88: G. 37; 39; 51; 54; 56; 57: H. 24, 1; 30; 36, 2; all of 56-59: C. Remainder of 26; 27.

VOCABULARY.

atquē¹ or āc,¹ conj.	<i>and.</i>
cāpūt, cāpītīs, n.	<i>head.</i>
custōs, custōdīs, m.	<i>guard.</i>
Dumnōrix, Dumnōrīgīs, m.	<i>Dumnorix.</i>
Jūra, ae, m.	<i>the Jura.</i>
mīlēs, mīlītīs, m.	<i>soldier.</i>
mons, montīs, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

pars,	partīs, f.	<i>part.</i>
princeps,	princīpis, m.	<i>chief.</i>
rādix,	rādīcīs, f.	<i>root.</i>
rex,	rēgīs, m.	<i>king.</i>
urbs,	urbīs, f.	<i>city.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ad rēgēm Germānōrum.
2. Ad princīpēm Galliae prōvinciae.
3. Ad montēm Jūram.
4. Sūb³ montē Jūrā.
5. Intēr montēm Jūram et flūmēn Rhōdānum.
6. Circūm urbēm² Rōmam.⁴
7. In urbē Rōmā.
8. Proptēr hōnōrēs Caesārīs.
9. In partēs Galliae.
10. Cūm Dumnōrīgē fratrē Divitiāci.
11. Rex atquē āmīcus.
12. Sīnē rēgē atquē sīnē āmīcis.
13. Cāpītā mīlītūm.
14. Ad rādīcēs montīs.
15. Cum princīpē tōtīus Galliae.
16. Urbēs multaē et magnae.⁵

Notes.

¹ atquē is used before vowels and consonants; āc, only before consonants.

² A. & G. 47 a, page 27 : A. & S. 109, a : B. 137, a, 1 : B. & M. 116; 119 : G. 54, REMARK : H. 64, urbs : C. p. 26, dens.

³ See sūb, in General Vocabulary at end of the book.

⁴ Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

⁵ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION.—TWO ACCUSATIVES.

58. Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing. A. & G. 239, 1 : A. & S. 394 (1) : B. 216, RULE VIII. : B. & M. 715 : G. 334 : H. 373 : C. 126.

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesārēm consūlēm creāvērunt, *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. Oppīdum appellāt Gēnāvam, *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

appellō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>name, call.</i>
civitās, cīvītātis, f.	<i>state.</i>
creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>elect, appoint.</i>
lēgātio, lēgātiōnis, f.	<i>embassy.</i>
lex, lēgis, f.	<i>law.</i>
mors, mortis, f.	<i>death.</i>
pax, pācīs, f.	<i>peace.</i>
post, prep. w. acc.	<i>after.</i>
proxīmūs, ā, ūm,	<i>nearest.</i>
Pyrēnaeūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Pyrenean.</i>
sēnātōr, sēnātōris, m.	<i>senator.</i>
suūs, ā, ūm,	<i>his, their.</i>
virtūs, virtūtis, f.	<i>valor, virtue.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Pōpūlus Caesārēm² consūlēm² creāvit. 2. Ancum Marcium rēgēm pōpūlus creāvit. 3. Nunciat Ancum Marcium rēgēm pōpūlum³ creāvisse.⁴ 4. Pōpūlus Rōmānus sēnātōrēs pātrēs appellat. 5. Rōmāni suam⁵ urbēm Rōmam appellā-vērunt. 6. Dumnorix, frātēr⁶ Divitiaci,⁷ regnum in suā⁵ cīvītātē occūpāvit. 7. Helvētii cūm proxīmis cīvītātibūs pācēm et āmīcītiā confirmant. 8. Caesār oppīdum virtūtē⁸ suōrum mīltūm expugnāvit. 9. Ex oppīdo Gēnāvā⁶ pons¹¹ ad Helvētios pertīnet (*extends*). 10. Aquītāniā ā Garumnā⁹ flūmīnē ad Pyrēnaeos⁹ montes pertīnet. 11. Lēgātiōnis prin-cīpēm Dumnorīgēm creāvērunt. 12. Belgae et Galli lingūa¹⁰ et lēgībūs¹⁰ diffērunt (*differ*). 13. Post mortēm Caesārīs.

Write in Latin.

1. After the death of Dumnorix. 2. After the death of his brother Divitiacus. 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. The Romans call their city Rome. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says that the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power in his state. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor.⁸

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See **58** and Examples.³ See **53**.⁴ See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

⁵ When **suūs** refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to **Rōmāni**, render it *their*: when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 6 it refers to **Dumnōrix**, render it *his, her, or its*. It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

⁶ See **25**.⁷ See **40**.⁸ See **54**.⁹ See General Vocabulary.¹⁰ See LN. I., NOTE 5.¹¹ **pons, pontis**, m. *bridge*.

v

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. *Review 44; 45; 46; 47; 48; 49, including all Paradigms under these references: A. & S. 105; 106, a, b, d, e; 107, and the decl. already learned: B. 136: B. & M. all the Paradigms under 88-97, III.: G. 48-50: H. all of 61: C. 26 to I.—nouns.*

60. Rules of Gender. A. & G. 65, a-c: A. & S. 118: B. 140: B. & M. 152; 159; 168: G. 40; 44; 47; 50; 57; 61, 1, 2: H. 99; 105; 111: C. 30.

VOCABULARY.

corpūs,	corpōrīs , n.	<i>body.</i>
crūs,	crūrīs , n.	<i>leg.</i>
flōs,	flōrīs , m.	<i>flower.</i>
frīgus,	frīgorīs , n.	<i>cold, frost.</i>
fūnūs,	fūnērīs , n.	<i>funeral procession.</i>
gēnūs,	gēnērīs , n.	<i>kind.</i>
jūs,	jūrīs , n.	<i>right, law.</i>
mōs,	mōrīs , m.	<i>custom, manner.</i>
ōnūs,	ōnērīs , n.	<i>load, burden.</i>
ōpūs,	ōpērīs , n.	<i>work.</i>
scēlūs,	scēlērīs , n.	<i>crime, guilt.</i>
tempūs,	tempōrīs , n.	<i>time.</i>
vulnūs,	vulnērīs , n.	<i>wound.</i>

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.¹

1. Jūs² belli; jūrā pōpūli Rōmāni. 2. Gēnūs prōeli;³ multa gēnērā fūnērūm. 3. Tempōrē⁴ pātrūm; tempōrā ēt mōrēs. 4. Vulnērā mīlītūm. 5. Flōrēs pulchri.⁵ 6. Prop-tēr frīgōrā. 7. In⁶ rēlīquum tempūs. 8. Mōrē ēt exemplō pōpūli Rōmāni. 9. Mīlītēs multā vulnērā accēpērunt (*have received*). 10. Scēlērā virōrum sunt (*are*) multa. 11. Crūrā ēqui sunt magna. 12. Corpūs vīri est (*is*) parvum. 13. Gē-nērā flōrūm sunt multa. 14. Nullum⁷ önūs aliud. 15. Nulla önērā alia. 16. Onērā multa et magna. 17. Facta⁸ māla⁹ scēlērā⁹ appellāmus. 18. Rex jūrā et mōrēs vīris¹⁰ dābāt.¹¹ 19. Multa gēnērā frūmenti importābimus. 20. Dīcit Rō-mānos multa gēnērā frūmenti importāre.¹²

Notes and Questions.

¹ All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce; translate," is given or not.

² Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form? What is the Plural Ending of these cases?

³ See **17.**

⁴ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁵ How does flōrēs pulchri differ from pulchri flōrēs? (LN. VI., NOTE 2.)

⁶ In, for.

⁷ Name the adjectives with Genitive in iūs and Dative in i. (24)

⁸ māla modifies facta.

⁹ See **58.**

¹⁰ See **39.**

¹¹ What does the Imperfect Tense denote? (36)

¹² See LN. XVII.



LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. 51, c; 52; 53, a-c; 54; 55, a-e; / A. & S. 108, a, b; 109, a: B. 130; 137, a, b, 1-2, REMARK: B. & M. all of 98, I., and 99, II.; 100: G. 58-61: H. 62, 1, 2; 63, 1; 64, 1; 65, 1-3: C. I.—*nouns*, pp. 25-27.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrōgēs, Allobrōgūm, m.	<i>the Allobroges.</i>
ănímăl, ănímális, n.	<i>animal.</i>
collis, collis, m.	<i>hill.</i>
crémō, árē, ávī, átūm,	<i>burn.</i>
finis, finis, m.	<i>limit; pl. territory.</i>
hostis, hostis, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
ignis, ignis, m.	<i>fire.</i>
märē, märis, n.	<i>sea.</i>
návís, návís, f.	<i>ship.</i>
núbēs, núbís, f.	<i>cloud.</i>
quě,¹ conj.	<i>and.</i>
rüpēs, rüpís, f.	<i>rock, cliff.</i>
terrā, ae, f.	<i>earth, land.</i>
turrīs, turrís, f.	<i>tower.</i>

¹ quě is appended to the second of the connected words: e. g. **rüpēs turrisquě**, *cliff and tower*. Words thus appended are called enclitics.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. In návibüs.
2. In¹ collē et in montē.
3. In hostiūm nūmérō.
4. Générā ănímaliūm multa sunt.
5. Terrā māriquě.²
6. Víros ignī³ crémant.
7. Allobrōgēs vírum ignī crémāre.
8. Nunciat Allobrōgēs⁴ vírum ignī crémāre.
9. In turrībüs et in¹ rüpībus.
10. In nubibüs.
11. Intēr finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrōgūm⁵ Rhōdānus fluit (*flows*).
12. Helvētii pēr angustias et finēs Sēquānōrum suas⁶ cōpias trāduxērant (*had led across*).
13. Mons Jūra finēs Sēquānōrum āb Helvētiis dīvīdit (*separates*).

Write in Latin.

1. On¹ the cliffs.
2. Out of the ships.
3. Through the territory of the Aedui.
4. Into the territory of the Sequani.
5. On the hills and mountains.
6. In the number of animals.
7. Men will burn the tower with fire.³
8. He says that men will burn the tower with fire.
9. Many kinds of towers.
10. The dangers of land and sea.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ in, on.
² A. & G. 156, a: A. & S. 562 (2): B. 330, a: G. 477; 478; 479:
H. 554, I., 2: C. 183, 2.
³ See 54.
⁴ See 53.
⁵ What does **Allobrögüm** modify?
⁶ See LN. XXI., NOTE 5. To what noun does it refer?
⁷ What is the rule of gender for märē, rūpēs, milēs, nāvis, tempūs,
hōnōr, cīvītās, lēgātīo? (60). See H. 100, 3, for lēgātīo.



LESSON XXIV.

THE VERB SUM.

62. Learn the entire conjugation of sum. A. & G. 119: A. & S. 215: B. 71: B. & M. 277: G. 112: H. 204: C. 70.

63. What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. 137: A. & S. 239: B. & M. 410: H. 289. What are the Stems of sūm? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of sum? Where are the following forms made: ērām, est, fuērunt, sīmūs, ērunt, fuērant, estō, fuissēm, fuērō?



LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. 176, a, b; 183; 185; 186, b: A. & S. 327-329; 334: B. 206, RULE II.: B. & M. 666: G. 202: H. 362; 438, 2: C. 111.

VOCABULARY.

Ārār, Ārāris, acc. Ārārim, m.	the <i>Sabne</i> , pronounced <i>Sōne</i> .
Divīco, ònis, m.	<i>Divico</i> .
extrēmūs, ā, ūm,	furthermost.
hōmōd, ¹ īnis, m. and f.	<i>man</i> .
impērātōr, òris, m.	<i>commander-in-chief, general</i> .

lěgio, ūnīs, f.	<i>legion.</i>
mūliēr, ērīs, f.	<i>woman.</i>
obsēs, idīs, m. and f.	<i>hostage.</i>
pōtestās, ātīs, f.	<i>power.</i>
testīs, īs, m. and f.	<i>witness.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze; parse.

1. Oppidum est magnum.² 2. Anīmäl fuīt parvum.
 3. Pūtat suam sōrōrēm essē pulchram.³ 4. Hōmīnēs fuērunt
 aegri. 5. Sēquāni sōli ērunt lībēri. 6. Cæsär ērät impērātōr.
 7. Mūliēr est bōna. 8. Dīcīt Sēquānos sōlos fūtūros essē
 lībēros. 9. Estē,⁴ O puēri, bōni. 10. Arioivistus fuīt rex
 Germānōrum. 11. Divīco dux Helvētiōrum fuērät. 12. Le-
 gatiōnīs Divīco princeps fuīt. 13. Extrēmum oppidum Allo-
 brōgum est Gēnēvā. 14. Pōpūlus⁵ Rōmānus est testīs.
 15. Erät in Galliā lěgio ūnă. 16. Pars cītrā flūmēn Arārīm⁶
 rēlīquă est. 17. Flūmēn⁷ est /Arār quōd (*which*) pēr fīnēs
 Aeduōrum et Sēquānōrum in Rhōdānum influīt (*flows*).
 18. Mons Jūră⁸ est inter Sēquānos ét Helvētios. 19. Prop-
 ter frīgōra frūmenta⁹ in agris mātūra non ērant. 20. Aedui
 Sēquānis¹⁰ obsidēs dēdērunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ hōmo means a *human being*, man or woman; vīr means *man, hero*, never woman.

² oppidum est magnum may be rendered *the town is large; it is a large town; or there is a large town*: the word *there* as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

³ See LN. XVII. and Examples.

⁴ See 47.

⁵ pōpūlus takes a *Singular verb*; *people*, its English equivalent, usually takes a *Plural verb*.

⁶ What is the rule of gender for Arār? (6)

⁷ See 64.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ Translate frūmenta as if it were Singular.

¹⁰ See 39.

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. 265, *a, b*: A. & S. 472; 476 (2): B. & M. 1161: G. 247-249: H. 196, II., 1-4: C. 201.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī Liscus sit dux,** if *Liscus* SHOULD BE *leader*; or, if *Liscus* BE *leader*.
2. **Sī Liscus esset dux,** if *Liscus* WERE *leader*.
3. **Sī Liscus fuērit dux,** if *Liscus* SHOULD HAVE BEEN *leader*; or, if *Liscus* SHOULD BE *leader*.
4. **Sī Liscus fuissest dux,** if *Liscus* HAD BEEN *leader*.
5. **Sīmus dūcēs,** LET US BE *leaders*.

VOCABULARY.

cūpīdītās, ātis, f.	desire.
dux, dūcīs, m. and f.	leader, guide.
Liscūs, ī, m.	<i>Liscus</i> .
multītūdo, īnis, f.	multitude.
nōn, adv.	not.
ōrātio, ōnīs, f.	speech, oration.
sī, conj.	if.
vectīgāl, ālīs, n.	tax, revenue.

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each Subjunctive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. **Sī² Caesar sit³ consul.** 2. **Sī Caesar esset consul.**
3. **Sī Caesar fuērit consul.** 4. **Sī Caesar fuissest consul.**
5. **Sīmus consūles.** 6. **Sī frūmentum esset mātūrum.** 7. **Sī propter frīgōra frūmentum in agris sit nōn⁵ mātūrum.** 8. **Sī vectīgālia fuissent magna.** 9. **Sī vectīgālia essent parva.**
10. **Sī Divīco princeps lēgātiōnis fuissest.** 11. **Sī nōn⁵ bōnus sis.** 12. **Sī ūrātiōnes Caesāris fuissent multae.** 13. **Sī multītūdo mīltum sit magna.** 14. **Sī cūpīdītās regni esset magna.**

15. *Sī rex fuisses.* 16. *Mīlītes sīmus.* 17. *Sī mīles essem.*
 18. *Sī sis impērātor.*

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king. 2. If Ariovistus were king. 3. If Ariovistus had been king. 4. Let us be kings. 5. Let us be good. 6. If the mountain were large. 7. If the boys had been bad. 8. If we were not free. 9. If the furthermost town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

¹ A Synopsis of the Subjunctive includes the First Person Singular of each tense : e. g. *sim*, *essem*, *fuērim*, *fuissem*.

² *sī* is a *conditional conjunction*; the sentence which it introduces is a *conditional sentence*.

³ Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the EXAMPLES.

⁴ See **64**.

⁵ A. & G. **207**: A. & S. **74** (5) : B. **30** : B. & M. **460** : G. **440**, 1, 2 : H. **551** : C. **255**. What does *nōn* modify ?



LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.—DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of sum. A. & G. **137**, *a* : A. & S. **215**, *d* : B. **109**, I., *a* : B. & M. **279**; **411** : G. **113**; **114** : H. **289**; **290**, I., III. : C. **71**.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. **228** : A. & S. **377** (1) : B. **242**, RULE XXX. : B. & M. **826** : G. **346** : H. **386** : C. **154**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Pauci**¹ **sūperfuērunt**, *few survived*.
2. **Dux suis mīlītibūs** (**67**) **ādērat**, *the leader was assisting his soldiers*.

3. Caesar prōvinciae (67) praefuit, *Caesar RULED OVER the province.*
4. Sī Liscus multis¹ prōdессет, *if Liscus WERE USEFUL to many.*
5. Sī consilium dēfuisset, *if counsel HAD BEEN WANTING.*
6. Titus lēgiōni (67) praeērat, *Titus WAS IN COMMAND OF the legion.*

VOCABULARY.

ăb-sūm,	ăb-essĕ,	ăb-fui,	<i>be away, be absent, be distant.</i>
ăd-sūm,	ăd-essĕ,	ăf ² -fui,	<i>be present, assist.</i>
dē-sūm,	dē-essĕ,	dē-fui,	<i>be wanting.</i>
hūmānītās, ātis, f.			<i>refinement, humanity.</i>
longissimē, adv.			<i>very far.</i>
pauci, ¹ ae, a,			<i>few.</i>
prae-sūm,	prae-essĕ,	prae-fui,	<i>be over, rule over, be in command of.</i>
prō-sūm,	prōd-essĕ,	prō-fui,	<i>be for, be useful.</i>
sūper-sūm,	sūper-essĕ;	sūper-fui,	<i>be over, survive.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multi¹ sūperfuērunt.
2. Multi³ sūpersūmus.
3. Pauci sūpērērimus.
4. Caesar suis mīlitībus⁴ ădērit.
5. Sī Caesar suis mīlitībus nōn adsit.⁵
6. Consul urbi praeērat.
7. Lābiēnus oppido⁶ Gēnāvae⁷ praeērit.
8. Consul lēgiōni praeest.
9. Sī Caesar multis¹ prōfuisset.
10. Multis prōsimus.⁸
11. Nōn deest consilium.
12. Consūles⁹ dēsūmus.
13. Belgae a hūmānītāte prōvinciae¹⁰ longissime¹¹ absunt.
14. Sī deus¹² adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many¹ will survive.
2. Few³ (of us) survive.
3. The consul will assist his soldiers.
4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers.
5. Let⁸ us assist the soldiers.
6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion.
7. If Labiēnus were¹³ in command of the legion.
8. If we consuls⁹ had been wanting.

Notes.

¹ **pauci** and **multi**, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. **Pauci** is rarely used in the Singular.

² Observe that in **ad-sum** the **d** of **ad** becomes **f** before **f**.

³ **multi** modifies **nos (we)**, the omitted subject of **sūpersūmus**; render, *many of us survive*.

⁴ See **67** and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.

⁵ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 1.

⁶ See **67**.

⁷ See **25**.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 5.

⁹ **consūles** is an appositive to **nos (we)**, the omitted subject of **dēstūmus**.

¹⁰ See **40**.

¹¹ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

¹² See **20**.

¹³ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 2.

LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF **POSSUM**. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possūm. A. & G. 137, b: A. & S. 216: B. 109, I., b: B. & M. 412: G. 115: H. 290, II., including fine print: C. 72.

69. Infinitive without Subject Accusative. A. & G. 271: A. & S. 532: B. 315, c: B. & M. 1138: G. 424: H. 533: C. 241.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Milites pugnāre** (**69**) **possunt**, *the soldiers ARE ABLE to fight*; or *the soldiers CAN fight*.
2. **Milites pugnāre pōtērant**, *the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight*; or *the soldiers COULD fight*.
3. **Milites pugnāre pōtērunt**, *the soldiers WILL BE ABLE to fight*.
4. **Milites pugnāre pōtuērunt**, *the soldiers HAVE BEEN ABLE to fight*; or *the soldiers COULD HAVE fought*.
5. **Sī milites pugnāre possint**, *if the soldiers SHOULD BE ABLE to fight*.
6. **Sī milites pugnāre possent**, *if the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight*.

7. **Sī mīlītes pugnāre pōtuissent**, if the soldiers HAD BEEN ABLE to fight.
8. **Dīcīt mīlītes (53) pugnāre (69) potuissē (52)**, he says that the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each form of POSSŪM; parse the Infinitives.²

1. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtest.³
2. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtērāt.
3. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtērīt.
4. Consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtuīt.
5. Dīcit consūlem⁴ oppīdum expugnāre pōtuissē.⁵
6. Sī consul oppīdum expugnāre possīt.
7. Sī consul oppīdum expugnāre possēt.
8. Sī consul oppīdum expugnāre pōtuissēt.
9. Pōpūlus Rōmānus Cassium⁶ consūlem⁶ creāre non pōtērīt.
10. Tīto⁷ filiam meam (*my*) in mātrīmōnium dāre non possūm.
11. Consūli⁸ adessē pōtērīs.
12. Mīlītes agros hostiū vastāre pōtērunt.
13. Amīcis prōdēssē possūmūs.
14. Nēmo (*no one*) sīne virtūte bonus essē pōtest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1 and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

³ Observe carefully how each tense of possūm is translated in the EXAMPLES. What two words unite to form possūm? Which part of pōtēs is used? What does the final t become before s? What becomes of f in the Perfect Tenses?

⁴ See 53.

⁶ See 58.

⁸ See 67.

⁵ See 52.

⁷ See 39.

LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO.

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of āmō. A. & G. 118, ACTIVE VOICE, for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive; 128:

A. & S. 213 (1); 222; 224, 4, b: B. 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 282: G. 119; 120: H. 205; 243; 245: C. p. 104; pp. 76, 77.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī urbem occūpēmus**, if we should occupy the city.
2. **Sī urbem occūpārēmus**, if we occupied the city.
3. **Sī urbem occūpāvērīmus**, if we should have occupied the city; or if we should occupy the city.
4. **Sī urbem occūpāvissēmus**, if we had occupied the city.
5. **Ut¹ urbem occūpēmus**, that we may occupy the city.
6. **Ut urbem occūpārēmus**, that we might occupy the city.
7. **Urbem occūpēmus**, let us occupy the city.

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. **Sī Sēquāni Helvētios jūvent.**²
2. **Sī Rōmāni Germānos jūvārent.**
3. **Sī rex Helvētios jūvērit.**
4. **Sī Aquītāni Sēquānos jūvissent.**
5. **Ut¹ consul Helvētios jūvet.**
6. **Ut pāter suos filios jūvāret.**
7. **Allobrōges jūvēmus.**
8. **Pueros vōcēmus.**
9. **Concīlium Gallōrum convōcēmus.**
10. **Sī Caesāri³ filiam suam in mātrīmōnium det.**
11. **Sī cum proxīmis cīvītātībus⁴ pācem et āmīcītiām confīrmes.**
12. **Ut mīlītes circum Rōmam hiēmārent.**
13. **Ut pōpūlus Ariovistum⁵ rēgem⁶ creāret.**
14. **Ut consul oppīdum Gēnāvam⁶ occūpāret.**
15. **Ut mīlītes Rōmāni agros Gallōrum vastent.**
16. **Ut suis cōpiis⁷ regna concīliāret.**

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends.
2. If we loved (our) friends.
3. If we had loved (our) friends.
4. That we may harass the enemy.
5. That we might harass the enemy.
6. Let us love friends.
7. If you should import ripe corn.
8. If you had imported ripe corn.
9. Let us aid the boys.
10. Let us elect the man⁵ senator.⁵

Notes and Questions.

¹ ut in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that*.

² Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (65). Define the Indicative Mood (26). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of *jūvō*.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 16. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See 58.

⁶ See 25.

⁷ *suis cōpiis, with his troops.* See 54.

LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF AMO.—TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of *āmō*.

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. 239, REM. : A. & S. 394 (2) : B. 217, RULE IX. : B. & M. 734 : G. 333 : H. 374 : C. 127.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesārem sententiam rōgāvit,** he asked Caesar (*his*) opinion.
2. **Caesar Aeduos frūmentum flāgitāvit,** Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.
3. **Rex pōpūlum sermōnem cēlāvit,** the king concealed the conversation from the people.

VOCABULARY.

cēlō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	conceal.
commeō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	go back and forth.
exspectō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	await, expect.
flāgitō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	demand.
grāvitēr,	adv.			severely.
mercātōr,	ōris, m.			trader, merchant.
mīnīmē,	adv.			least, by no means.
rōgō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	ask.

<i>saepē</i> , adv.	<i>often.</i>
<i>sententiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>opinion.</i>
<i>sermo</i> , ūnīs, m.	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
<i>vulnērō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>wound.</i>

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Lăbiēnus suos² mīlītes³ exspectābat.⁴ 2. Galli mercātōres exspectāvēre.⁵ 3. Tītus nunciat Gallos mercātōres exspectāvisse.⁶ 4. Mīlītes Sēquānos grāvīter vulnērāvērunt. 5. Caesar princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsat. 6. Dīcit Caesārem princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōres ad⁷ Belgas commeant.⁸ 8. Mercātōres ād Belgas nōn saepe commeant. 9. Mīnīme⁹ ād Belgas mercātōres saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,⁹ mercātōres, ād Belgas. 11. Consul Germānos cōpias flāgītābit.¹⁰ 12. Consul Gallos frūmentum flāgītat. 13. Sī consul Aeduos cōpias flāgītet. 14. Caesar consūlem sententiam rōgābit. 15. Dīcit Caesārem consūlem sententiam rōgātūrum essē. 16. Tītum sermōnem nōn cēlābo. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduos frūmentum flāgītēmus.¹⁰

Notes and Questions.¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See LN. VI., NOTE 1.³ See LN. IV., NOTE 1.⁴ See LN. XVIII., NOTE 3.⁵ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)⁶ See LN. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and NOTE 3.⁷ *ād* — *commeant*, *go-back-and-forth to*, may be rendered *visit*.⁸ *mīnīme* modifies *saepe*.⁹ See 47.¹⁰ See LN. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? What are the Endings of the Infinitives? Of the Participles? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem? Which of the Subjunctive? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO**.**72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.**

A. & G. 111; 116; 118: A. & S. 193; 213 (1): B. 44; 64, a,
PASSIVE: B. & M. 262, 2; 333, PASSIVE VOICE: G. 205; 111:
H. 195, II.; 247, PERSON, PASS., MEANING: C. 64; p. 103.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of **āmō**. A. & G. 129: A. & S. 223: B. 74, b: B. & M. 283: G. 121: H. 206: C. p. 78.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings: e. g. **āmā-mūs**, *we love*; **āmā-mūr**, *we ARE loved*; **āmābī-tīs**, *you will love*; **āmābī-mīnī**, *you will BE loved*. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has **bī**, and in the Passive, **bē**: e. g. **āmā-bī-s**, *you will love*; **āmā-bē-tīs** or **rē**, *you will BE loved*. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

appellō , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>name, call.</i>
Castīcūs , ī, m.	<i>Casticus.</i>
nostēr , nostrā, nostrūm,	<i>our.</i>
occultō , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>hide, conceal.</i>

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;¹ parse the nouns.

- Oppida expugnābuntūr.
- Nostri agri vastābuntūr.
- Hōmo igni² crēmābītūr.
- Concīlīum Gallōrum convōcābātūr.
- Nostrā linguā³ Galli⁴ appellātūr.
- Ariovistus rex⁴ atque amīcus appellābātūr.
- Lucius Cassius consul⁵ āmīcus⁴ appellābītūr.
- Rex⁴ appellābērīs.
- Divitiācus frāter⁵ Dumnōrīgis āmīcus⁴ pōpūli Rōmāni appellābātūr.
- Pāter Castīci pōpūli Rōmāni āmīcus appellābātūr.
- In tantā multītūdīne fūga occultātūr.
- Orātiōne⁶ Lisci Dumnōrix Divitiāci frāter dēsignātūr.
- Dumnōrix ab Aeduis⁶ accūsābātūr.
- A Caesāre⁶ accūsābīmīnī.

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

¹ See LN. X., NOTE 4, and LN. XII., NOTE 1.

² See 54.

³ See 54 and LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ See 25.

⁶ With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent*, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by *the Ablative with ā, āb*; *the instrument*, i. e. the thing *by means of which* or *with which* anything is done, by *the Ablative without a preposition*: e. g. *He is overcome BY THE SOLDIER, a milite sūpēratūr*; *he is overcome BY the soldier's WEAPONS, tēlis milītis sūpēratūr*.

LESSON XXXII.**VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).**

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of **āmō**. A. & G. 118; 129: A. & S. 211; 214; 223: B. 76: B. & M. 281, 6, 4; 283: G. 122: H. 206: C. p. 79.

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcīs, f.	<i>citadel.</i>
comportō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>collect.</i>
ēnunciō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>divulge, report.</i>
ēquēs, Itīs, m.	<i>horseman, cavalryman.</i>
praetōr, ūris, m.	<i>praetor.</i>

Conjugate and give a Synopsis¹ of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduis² comportātum³ est. 2. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab Aeduis comportātā ērat. 3. Obs̄des Helvētiis⁴ dāti³ ērant. 4. Multi obs̄des Helvētiis ā Sēquānis dāti ērant. 5. Nullae⁵ arces expugnātāe³ sunt. 6. Nostra consilia hostībus⁴ ēnunciātā³ sunt. 7. Nostra consilia hostībus ab Aeduis ēnunciātā ērant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānis praetor⁶ creātus³ est. 9. Praetōres⁶ creātī ērīmus. 10. Nostri agri vastāti sunt. 11. Nostra opp̄da expugnāta sunt. 12. Tantā multitūdo ēquītum sūp̄rātā³ est. 13. In tantā multitūdīne ēquītum nostra fūga occultata est. 14. Cōpiae Caesāris ab Germānis ūno proelio⁷ sūp̄rātāe sunt. 15. Equītes ā Caesāre grāvīter⁸ accūsātī sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.² 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls⁴ by the Germans. 5. Cassius had been elected praetor.⁶ 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.⁷ 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely⁸ censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

³ Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (**64**), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender, number, and case*.

⁴ See **39**.

⁵ See **24**.

⁶ See **64**. What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

⁷ ūno proelio, *in a single battle*. See **54**.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **āmō**. A. & G. 116, b; 118; 129: A. & S. 223, page 114: B. 64, b; 65; 66; 74, b; 76: B. & M. 283: G. 121; 122: H. 247, 3; 248; 206: C. pp. 79, 80.

**Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb;
parse the Infinitives and Nouns.**

1. *Accūsārē, accūsāmīnī.*¹ 2. *Accūsātōr, accūsantōr.* 3. *Jū-vārē, jūvātōr.* 4. *Vōcāmīnī, vōcantōr.* 5. *Dīcit suum frā-trem creātūm essē.*² 6. *Dīcit frātrem Divitiāci dēsignatūm essē.* 7. *Dīcit montem ā Lābiēno occūpārī.* 8. *Nēgāt³ no-strōs agrōs vastatōs essē.* 9. *Nēgāt cūm proxīmis cīvītātibus pācem confirmatām essē.* 10. *Dīcit regnum īn cīvītātē suā occūpātūm essē.* 11. *Nunciāt Caesārem creātūm essē consūlēm.* 12. *Nunciāt Cassium prætōrem creātūm essē.* 13. *Dīcit Ariovistum ā Rōmānis rēgem appellatūm essē.*

Notes and Questions.

¹ How is the Imperative used? (47)

² **creātūm essē**, *has been elected, or was elected.* See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

³ **nēgāt**, *he says not; lit. he denies:* HE SAYS our fields have NOT been laid waste.

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed? Of the Indicative Passive? The Imperative Active and Passive? The Infinitives Active and Passive? The Participles Active and Passive?

How many Participles has a transitive verb? A. & G. 109, a: A. & S. 206: B. 54; 55: B. & M. 269: H. 200, IV., NOTE: C. 65, 4.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of **āmō**. A. & G. **129**: A. & S. **223**: B. **74**, b; **76**: B. & M. **283**: G. **121**; **122**: H. **206**: C. pp. 78, 79.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī hōmo crēmētūr**, if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.
2. **Sī hōmo crēmārētūr**, if the man WERE BEING BURNED.
3. **Sī hōmo crēmātūs sīt**, if the man SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED; or if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.
4. **Sī hōmo crēmātūs essēt**, if the man HAD BEEN BURNED; or if the man WERE BURNED.
5. **Sī sententiam rōgētūr**, if HE SHOULD BE ASKED (his) opinion.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. **Sī Caesar sententiam¹ rōgātūs essēt**.
2. **Sī sententiam rōgātūs sīm**.
3. **Sī sententiam rōgārērīs**.
4. **Sī crēmātī es-sēmūs**.
5. **Sī Ariovistus rex² creātūs essēt**.
6. **Sī mīles vul-nērētūr**.
7. **Sī non vulnērātūs essēs**.
8. **Sī Ariovistus amīcus pōpūli Rōmāni appellārētūr**.
9. **Sī obsīdes Rōmānis³ ā Gallis⁴ nōn dentūr**.
10. **Sī obsīdes Germānis āb Helvētiis nōn dātī essent**.
11. **Sī cōpia frūmenti importētūr**.
12. **Sī cōpia frūmenti nōn importātā essēt**.
13. **Sī Divitiācūs ā pōpūlo Rōmāno rex appellātūs essēt**.
14. **Sī rex atque amīcus ā Helvētiis appellārērīs**.
15. **Sī sententiam rōgātī essēmūs**.
16. **Sī sententiam rōgātī sītīs**.
17. **Sī rēges creātī essētīs**.
18. **Sī consūles creātī essēmūs**.

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion.
2. If you were asked (your) opinion.
3. If you had been burned.
4. If Cassius had been elected consul.
5. If Cassius had not been called a friend of the Gauls.
6. If hostages should be given

to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 71.

² See 64.

³ See 39.

⁴ Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (16) How is *the agent* of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.) How is *the instrument* expressed? What is meant by *the agent*? By *the instrument*?



LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 135¹; A. & S. 195: B. 46: B. & M. 304: G. 211: H. 195, II. 2: C. 79.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. page 106, *mīror*: A. & S. 223, *mīror*: B. 93, *cōnor*; 55, second sentence: B. & M. 306, second part; 307; G. 141; 142: H. 231; 232: C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cōnor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	attempt, try.
<i>glōrior</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	glory, boast.
<i>hortor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	exhort, urge.
<i>laetor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	rejoice, exult.
<i>mīror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	admire, wonder at.
<i>mōror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	tarry, delay.
<i>vāgor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	wander about.
<i>pōpūlor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	ravage, lay waste.

¹ The principal parts of a deponent verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative; e. g. *cōnor*, *cōnāri*, *cōnātūs sūm*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābīmur. 2. Glōriātus sum,
glōriātus ēram, glōriātus ēro. 3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur.
4. Sī hortātus sis, sī hortātus esses. 5. Laetāre, laetāmīni,
laetēmur.² 6. Dīcit Caesārem laetātum essē. 7. Mirāri³ nōn
possūmus. 8. Vāgāri³ cōnēmur.² 9. Vāgāri nōn pōtērīmus.
10. Caesar ād⁴ Rōmam mōrātus est. 11. Helvētii agros
Aeduōrum pōpūlābantur. 12. Ut vāgārentur.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort.
2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried.
3. If he should tarry, if he tarried.
4. If he had tarried near Rome.
5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva.
6. They can⁶ not rejoice.
7. They could⁶ not rejoice.
8. Let us try² to rejoice.

Notes.

¹ A complete Synopsis of **cōnor**, for example, is as follows: *Indicative*, cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus ēram, cōnātus ēro; *Subjunctive*, cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem; *Imperative*, cōnāre, cōnātor; *Infinitives*, cōnāri, cōnātus essē, cōnātūrus essē; *Participles*, cōnāns, cōnāndus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus; *Gerund*, cōnāndi; *Supines*, cōnātum, cōnātu.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

³ See 69.

⁴ **ād** with the name of a town may often be rendered *near*, *in the vicinity of*.

⁵ Render by the Imperfect Indicative.

⁶ *Can* and *could* in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able*, *were able*; translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of **possūm**, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. 245 : A. & S. 404 : B. 257,
RULE XLII. : B. & M. 873 : G. 407 : H. 413 ; 416 : C. 166.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. 180,
a-f : A. & S. 311-314, a : B. 288, a-f : B. & M. 1407-1409 ;
1411 : G. 474, 1-4 : H. 348 ; 349 : C. 107, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Puēri ēquis¹** (79) *laetantur, boys rejoice IN HORSES.*
2. **Helvētii suā victōriā¹** (79) *glōriābantur, the Helvetii were boasting BECAUSE OF their VICTORY ; or the Helvetii were glorying IN their VICTORY.*
3. **Orgetōrix Castīcum hortātūr ūt regnum occūpet,²** *Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.*
4. **Miles nōn laetētūr, sī vulnērētūr,³** *the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.*
5. **Sī multi vulnērāti essent, nōn laetāti essēmus,** *if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.*
6. **Ariovistus fuit rex ēt Caesar fuit consul,⁴** *Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.*

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. Impērātor mīlītībus bōnis laetātūr. 2. Rōmāni suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur. 3. Sēquāni victōriā suā nōn glōriābuntur. 4. Nēgat⁵ Sēquānos victōriā glōriātūros essē. 5. Mīlītes hortābimur ūt agros pōpūlentur. 6. Impērātor mīlītes suos hortātūs est⁶ ūt agros Gallōrum pōpūlentur. 7. Dum-nōrīgem hortābor ūt regnum ūt suā cīvītāte occūpet. 8. Sī igni⁸ crēmer, nōn laetēris. 9. Sī Cassius praetor⁹ crēatus esset, laetātūs essem. 10. Sī Caesar sermōnem¹⁰ mīlītes¹⁰ cēlet, laeter. 11. Sī dux mīlītībus¹¹ adesse¹² possit, laetentur. 12. Hortēmur¹³ Helvētios ūt cūm proxīmis cīvītātībus pācem

ět āmīcītiā confirment. 13. Sī Caesar multos obsīdes dēdis-set hostībus,¹⁴ hostes laetāti essent. 14. Puer črat mǎlus ět puella črat bōna. 15. Consul ābest ět praetor est aeger.⁹

Notes.

¹ In Examples 1 and 2 ěquis and victoriā are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative in accordance with the rule referred to in **79**.

² Example 3 is a *complex sentence*, because it is made up of a *principal clause*, Orgetōrix Casticūm hortātur, and a *subordinate clause*, ut regnum occūpet. Observe that *ut occūpet* is rendered by the Infinitive *to seize*; lit. *that he may seize*.

³ Example 4 is a *complex sentence*; *principal clause*, miles non laetētur; *subordinate clause*, si vulnērētur: *si* and *ut* are *subordinate conjunctions*; hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

⁴ Example 6 is a *compound sentence*, because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate clauses*; and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions*.

⁵ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3. ⁶ hortātus est, has urged.

⁷ See LN. XIII., NOTE 5. Which is this?

⁸ See **54**.

⁹ See **64**.

¹⁰ See **71**.

¹¹ See **67**.

¹² See **69**.

¹³ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁴ See **39**.

LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 84, lěvīs, ācěr, b, *Case-Forms*: A. & S. **148-150**; **152**; **155** (1), (2): B. **156**; **157**, lěvīs: B. & M. **193**, RULES 1, 2; **196**, II., mǐtīs; **198**, ācěr: G. 81; 82: H. **152**; **153**; **154**, tris-tīs: C. 42; 43.

VOCABULARY.

ǎlācěr,¹ crīs, crě, *lively, eager.*

brěvīs,² ě, *short, brief.*

cělěr,¹ cělěrīs, cělěrě, *swift.*

difficilis , ² ě,	<i>difficult, impracticable.</i>
équestér , ¹ tr̄s, tr̄,	<i>of cavalry.</i>
facilis , ² ě,	<i>easy, practicable.</i>
familiā , ae, f.	<i>household, family.</i>
fortis , ² ě,	<i>brave, courageous, strong.</i>
ítér , ítinérís , n.	<i>journey, route, march.</i>
jūdiciúm , ī, n.	<i>trial.</i>
omnīs , ² ě,	<i>all, every.</i>
tristis , ² ě,	<i>sad.</i>

¹ Declined like ~~ácer~~.² Declined like ~~lēvis~~, ~~mitis~~, ~~facilis~~, ~~tristis~~.**Analyze and parse.**

1. Ex omnī¹ Galliā. 2. Cūm omnībūs cōpiīs. 3. Pēr omnēs urbēs. 4. Pēr tōtām² urbēm. 5. Equī sunt cēlērēs.³ 6. Nēgāt⁴ équōs essē cēlērēs. 7. Sī équītēs fuissent cēlērēs, rex laetātūs essēt.⁵ 8. Tempūs est brēvē. 9. Helvētiī oppidā suā omniā incendunt (*burn*). 10. Fuīt proeliūm équestrē. 11. Dicīt fūtūrūm essē proeliūm équestrē. 12. Sēquānī fuērunt tristes. 13. Itēr¹² érat diffīcilē. 14. Sī itēr sīt fācīlē, laetēr.⁶ 15. Pūtō itēr essē fācīlē. 16. Tītūs Lābiēnūs lēgātūs⁷ suōs mīlītēs hortātūr ūt⁹ fortēs sint.⁹ 17. Orgētōrix ad jūdiciūm omnēm suām familiām coēgīt (*brought*). 18. Orgētōrix Helvētiōs hortātūs est¹³ ūt¹⁰ dē fīnībūs suīs cūm omnībūs cōpiīs exīrent.¹⁰ 19. Vīrīs¹¹ fortībūs laetōr.

Notes.¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 1.² See 24.³ See 64.⁴ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.⁶ See LN. XXVI., Ex. 1 and LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.⁷ See 25.⁹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.¹⁰ ūt—exīrent, *to go out*.¹¹ See 79.¹² See A. & G. 60, c: A. & S. 110 (4): B. 138: B. & M. 104: C. 29, 10, exc. 2.¹³ hortatus est: *urged*.

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

82. A. & G. 85, *a, b*; 87, *a, c*: A. & S. 154; 155 (3): B. *all of* 158: B. & M. *all of* 193: G. 83; 84; 85, 1-3: H. *all of* 155-158; C. 45.

VOCABULARY.

audax , ācīs,	<i>bold, audacious.</i>
condītio , īnīs, f.	<i>condition.</i>
contūmēliā , ae, f.	<i>insult.</i>
dīvēs , ītīs,	<i>rich.</i>
fēlix , īcīs,	<i>happy.</i>
flens , entīs,	<i>weeping.</i>
implōrō , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>beseech, implore.</i>
injūriā , ae, f.	<i>injury.</i>
mūliēr , ērīs, f.	<i>woman.</i>
ōriens , entīs,	<i>rising.</i>
pār , pārīs,	<i>equal.</i>
princeps , īpīs,	<i>first, chief.</i>
rēcens , entīs,	<i>recent.</i>
sōl , sōlīs, m.	<i>sun.</i>
spectō , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>look, front.</i>
vētūs , ērīs,	<i>old, ancient.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Vētērēs causae.
2. Vētūs urbs¹ est Rōmā.
3. Mēmōriā vētērīs contūmēliae.
4. In pārēm condītiōnēm servītūtīs.
5. Rēcentiūm injūriārūm mēmōriā.
6. Mūliērēs ērant fēlīcēs.
7. Mūliērēs flentēs Caesārēm implōrābant.
8. Helvētiī flentes pācēm pētiērunt (*sought*).
9. Hortēmūr² mīlitēs ūt³ ālacrēs et audācēs sint.³
10. Belgae spectant īn⁴ ūrientēm sōlēm.⁵
11. Lēgātiōnīs princīpēm⁶ lōcūm⁷ obtīnēbant (*they held*).
12. Rōmānī dīvītēs fuērunt.
13. Germānī nōn pārēs sunt nostrīs mīlitībūs.⁸

Write in Latin.

1. There⁹ will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All¹⁰ are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be¹¹ rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalry-men.

Notes.

¹ See 64.

² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge?* ANSW. By the Present Infinitive. See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁴ *in, towards.*

⁵ See B. 135: B. & M. 121: H. 60: C. 37, 5.

⁶ *principēm* is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.

⁷ How is *lōcūs* declined in the Plural? See VY., LN. VIII.

⁸ *militibūs* is a *Dative.* ⁹ See LN. XXV., NOTE 2, *last part.*

¹⁰ *omnes*, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.

¹¹ *cannot be, essē nōn possunt.*

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. 89, *a*: A. & S. 163-166: B. 161; 162; 163, *a*: B. & M. 214-218: G. 86; 88, 1: H. 160-162; 163, 1: C. 47; 48.

84. Declension of Comparatives. A. & G. 86, *a*: A. & S. 152, *mītior*: B. 157, REMARK: B. & M. 197: G. 87: H. 154, NOTE 1: C. 44.

VOCABULARY.

<i>altūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>high, deep.</i>
<i>fortūnā, ae, f.</i>	<i>fortune.</i>
<i>grāvīs, ē,</i>	<i>heavy, grievous.</i>
<i>lātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>broad, wide.</i>

longē , adv.	<i>by far.</i>
mīsér , mīsérā , mīsérūm ,	<i>wretched, pitiable.</i>
nōbīlīs , ě ,	<i>well-known, noble.</i>
pōtēns , entīs ,	<i>powerful.</i>
quām , adv.	<i>than.</i>
ūtilīs , ě ,	<i>useful.</i>

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Jūrā est mons¹ altissimūs.² 2. Caesār dīcīt Jūrām essē montēm altissimūm. 3. Rhēnūs est flūmēn lātissimūm ēt altissimūm. 4. Hōmīnī³ nōbīlissimō āc⁶ pōtentissimō adērām. 5. Omniūm⁴ fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Apūd Helvētiōs longē nōbīlissimūs ēt ditissimūs¹⁰ fuīt Orgētōrix. 7. Pēr trēs (*three*) pōtentissimōs pōpūlōs tōtīūs Galliae. 8. Nostraē fīliae pulcherrīmae sunt. 9. Mīlitēs hortēmūr ūt fortōrēs sint.⁵ 10. Sī tempūs fuissēt brēviūs, nōn laetatūs essēm. 11. Mīlitēs fuērunt Caesārī ūtlīssimī. 12. Dīcīt essē mīsēriōrēm grāviōremquē⁷ fortūnām⁸ Sēquānōrūm quām⁹ rēliquōrūm Gallōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhinē is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

¹ What is the gender of **mons**? Of **Jūrā**?

² *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. **mons altissimūs**, *a very high mountain*. They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

³ **67.**

⁴ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See LN. XX., NOTE 1.

⁷ What is the difference in force of **ět**, **quē**, and **atquē**? See LN. XXIII.,

NOTE 2. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIII., NOTE on *quē*, last part.

⁸ *fortūnām* is subject of *essē*.

⁹ When *quām* signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. *quām Rōmānōrūm*, *than THAT of the Romans*.

¹⁰ See General Vocabulary under *dīvēs* and *dīs*.

LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. 89, *b-e*; 90; 91, *a, b*: A. & S. 167-170 (1), (2);
173: B. 163, *b-d*; 164, *a, b*: B. & M. 219-222: G. 88, 2-4; 89,
REMARKS 1, 2: H. 163, 2, 3; 165; 166; 169, 1, 2; 170: C. 49.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs , lūm, f.	<i>the Alps.</i>
cit̄riōr , cit̄riūs,	<i>hither.</i>
extrā , prep. w. acc.	<i>without, beyond.</i>
inf̄riōr , inf̄riūs,	<i>lower.</i>
pr̄imūs , ā, ūm,	<i>first.</i>
Sēgūsiānī , ūrūm, m.	<i>the Segusiani.</i>
Sēquānūs , ā, ūm,	<i>of the Sequani.</i>
sūp̄eriōr , sūp̄eriūs,	<i>higher, upper.</i>
ult̄riōr , ult̄riūs,	<i>farther.</i>

Translate and parse.

1. **Mājōr**¹ mult̄tūdo Germānōrum² Rhēnum transībāt (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrum² max̄imus nūmērus. 3. Cum max̄imo mīlītum² nūmēro. 4. Belgae pertīnent (*extend*) ād inf̄riōrem partem flūmīnis Rhēni. 5. Galli lōca sūp̄eriōra occūpant. 6. Lābiēnus summum montem³ occūpāvit. 7. Summus mons ā Lābiēno⁴ occūpātus est. 8. Nēgat summum montem ā Lābiēno occūpātum essē. 9. Mīlītes hortābīmur

ut summum montem occūpent. 10. Si Lābiēnus summum montem occūpet, Caesar sit⁵ fēlicissimus. 11. Iter pēr prōvinciam est fācilius.⁶ 12. Ager Sēquānus ērat optimus⁷ tōtius Galliae. 13. Caesar īn Galliam ultēriōrem pēr Alpes contendit (*hastens*). 14. Cītēriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppīdum. 15. Segūsiāni sunt extrā prōvinciam pīrimi.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses.
2. A larger number of cavalrymen.
3. To the upper part of the Rhône.
4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain.
5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers.
6. The route through our province is most practicable.
7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable.
8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

¹ In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.

² Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See LN. III., NOTE 3.

³ **summum montem**, *the top of the mountain*.

⁴ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ **sit**, *would be*.

⁶ Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like **fācilius**.

⁷ **optimus**, sc. **äger**.

LESSON XLI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. 234: A. & S. 388: B. 245, RULE XXXIII.: B. & M. 860: G. 356: H. 391: C. 162, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs**, *the Belgae are nearest to the Germans.*
2. **Castrīs īdōneūs lōcūs est**, *the place is suitable for a camp.*
3. **Deō sīmīlīs est**, *he is like a god.*

VOCABULARY.

aetās, ātīs, f.	<i>age.</i>
āmīcūs, ā, ūm,	<i>friendly.</i>
commūnīs, ē,	<i>common.</i>
īdōneūs, ā, ūm,	<i>fit, suitable.</i>
īnīmīcūs, ā, ūm,	<i>unfriendly, hostile.</i>
pātriā, ae, f.	<i>native land, fatherland.</i>
pērīcūlōsūs, ā, ūm,	<i>dangerous.</i>
sīmīlīs, ē,	<i>like, similar.</i>
sōlūm, ī, n.	<i>ground, soil.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquītānī sunt proximī prōvinciae.
2. Aquītānī sunt prōpiōrēs prōvinciae quām Itāliae.
3. Gēnāvā est oppīdūm proximūm Helytīorūm fīnībūs.
4. Extrēmūm oppīdūm Allobrōgūm est proximumquē Helytīorūm fīnībūs Gēnāvā.
5. Castrīs nōn īdōneūs omnīs lōcūs est.
6. Nēgāt castrīs īdōneūm omnēm lōcūm essē.
7. Sī castrīs īdōneūs lōcūs sīt, mīlītēs laetentūr.¹
8. Nōn ēgō sūm īdōneūs armīs.
9. Sī ēgō fuissēm īdōneūs armīs, laetātūs essēm.
10. Dumnōrix Helytīis ērāt āmīcūs.
11. Dux īnīmīciōr Dumnōrīgī fuīt quām Caesārī.
12. Mātrī puellā est sīmīlīs.
13. Nōn omnīs puēr est sīmīlīs pātrī.
14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnīs.
15. Pātriae sōlūm omnībūs cārūm est.
16. Pōpūlō Rōmānō pērīcūlōsūm est proeliūm.
17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt ūtīlēs.
18. Impērātōr suōs mīlītēs hortātūr ūt fortēs sint² et urbī Rōmae ūtīlēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province.
2. Ocelum was the furthermost town of the hither province and nearest to the Alps.
3. If the place had been suitable for a camp, we should have rejoiced.³
4. Let us urge the soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland.
5. The lieutenant was most friendly to the soldiers.
6. The daughter is more like (her) father than (her) mother.
7. I do⁴ not think (that) the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (**80**)

² See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁴ See LN. X., NOTE 5.

LESSON XLII.

ADVERBS.

87. Definition. A. & G. **25**, *f*: A. & S. **74** (5) : B. **30** : B. & M. **460** : G. **15**, IV., 1 : H. **303** : C. **98**.

88. Derivation. A. & G. **148**, *a, b*: A. & S. **174**, *b*: B. **199**, *b, c*: B. & M. **591**; **592**; **595**: G. **90**, 1-4 : H. **304**, I.-IV.: C. **99**, 1, 2.

89. Classification. A. & G. **149**, *a-g*: B. **175**, *a-f*, REMARK : B. & M. **461**, 1-6: H. **305**, NOTE 2, 1)-4): C. **99**, 3.

90. Comparison. A. & G. **92**: A. & S. **175**: B. **174**, *a-c*: B. & M. **462**; **463**: G. **91**: H. **306**: C. 52.

91. Syntax. A. & G. **207**: A. & S. **557**: B. **327**, RULE LXXIX. : B. & M. **996**: G. **440**, 2 : H. **551**: C. **255**.

VOCABULARY.

ācītēr , adv.	<i>sharply, fiercely.</i>
audactēr , adv.	<i>boldly, courageously.</i>
cēlēritēr , adv.	<i>quickly, immediately.</i>
fācilē , adv.	<i>easily, readily.</i>
fortitēr , adv.	<i>bravely, valiantly.</i>
grāvitēr , adv.	<i>heavily, severely.</i>
libērē , adv.	<i>freely, unreservedly.</i>
quā , adv.	<i>where.</i>

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortitēr¹ pugnāvērunt.
2. Sī mīlītēs fortiūs pūgnēnt, impērātōr laetētūr.
3. Rōmānī nōn ācriūs pugnābunt quām Gallī.²
4. Germānī Helvētiōs fācīlē³ sūpērābunt.
5. Gallī ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātī sunt.
6. Nunciāt Gallōs ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātōs essē.
7. Caesār Dumnōrīgēm grāvissīmē accūsāvīt.
8. Caesār cēlēritēr con-cīliūm dīmittīt (*dismisses*).
9. Liscūs dīcīt libēriūs⁴ atquē⁵ audāciūs.
10. Quā⁶ mīnīmā altītūdo flūmīnīs ērāt.
11. Jū-mentōrūm ēt carrōrūm quām⁷ maxīmūm nūmērūm coēmērē⁸ (*to purchase*).
12. Hostēs quām fortissīmē pugnābant.
13. Helvētiī Rōmānīs⁹ quām āmīcīssīmī fuērunt.
14. Sōlūm pātrīae cīvī quām cārīssīmūm est.

Notes.

¹ Form for parsing an adverb. — **fortitēr** is an adverb of manner (89); derived from the adjective **fortis** (88); compared **fortitēr**, **fortiūs**, **fortissīmē** (90); of the positive degree and modifies **pugnāvērunt** (91).

² What is the construction of **Gallī**?

³ A. & G. 148, d: A. & S. 174 c: B. 174, d: B. & M. 596: G. 90, 4: H. 304, I., 3, 1): C. 99, 1, a.

⁴ **libērē** has no Superlative.

⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

⁶ As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

⁷ **quām** modifying a Superlative strengthens it: e. g. **quām maximum**, *as large as possible*; **quām fortissīmē**, *as bravely as possible*.

⁸ (..) is the mark of *Diaeresis*; when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation: e. g. **coēmere** has four syllables; **coemere** would have only three.

⁹ See **86.**



LESSON XLIII.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation.
A. & G. 130: A. & S. 222: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 288: G. 123; 124: H. 207: C. 75. See **27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50** of this book.

VOCABULARY.

mōneō, ¹	ērē, uī, ītūm,	advise.
hābeō,	ērē, uī, ītūm,	have.
prōhibeō,	ērē, uī, ītūm,	restrain, keep from.

¹ Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like mōneō. For the *principal parts* let ērē, uī, ītūm take the place of final eō: e. g. hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb; name its elements.

1. Mōnēbātīs, mōnēbītīs, mōnuistīs. 2. Sī mōneāmūs,² sī mōnērēmūs, sī mōnuissēmūs. 3. Mōnē, mōnētē, mōnēntō.
4. Mōnens, mōnītūrūs. 5. Mōnērē, mōnuissē, mōnītūrūs essē. 6. Ut ēquōs hābeāmūs.² 7. Ut rex urbēs multās ēt³ magnās hābeāt. 8. Multā castrā hābēbīmūs. 9. Lēgātūs multōs mīlītēs hābuērt.⁴ 10. Hābētō, hābētōtē.⁵ 11. Hābens, hābitūrūs. 12. Hābērē, hābuissē, hābētūrūs essē. 13. Sī Helvētiōs ītīnērē⁶ prōhibeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs ītīnērē prōhibuissent. 15. Helvētiōs ītīnērē prōhibeāmūs.⁷ 16. Itīnērē Helvētiōs prōhibērē⁸ cōnantūr. 17. Itīnērē hostēs prōhibēbīmūs. 18. Mīlītēs ītīnērē hōstēs prōhibērē cōnābuntūr. 19. Sī ītīnērē mīlītēs prōhibuissēmūs. 20. Legātī nostrōs vīrōs mōnuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had. 2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had. 3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have. 4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain. 5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town. 6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town. 7. Let us ~~prohibere~~ ^{prohibere} ~~avare~~ ^{avare} keep the enemy from the town. 8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLES.

³ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (42)

⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (47)

⁶ *Itinérē* is an *Ablative of Separation*. A. & G. 243: A. & S. 413: B. 256, RULE XLI.: B. & M. 916: G. 388: H. 413; 414: C. 177.

⁷ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

⁸ See 69.

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (28, 45, 50) What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (43)

LESSON XLIV.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. Accusative of Time. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 423: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 950: G. 337: H. 379: C. 129, I. This answers the question, *How long?*

VOCABULARY.

dēleō, ērē, ēvī, ētūm, *destroy.*

dōceō, ērē, uī, doctūm, *teach.*

✉ jūbeō, ērē, jussī, jussūm, *command, order.*

✉ māneō, ērē, mansī, mansūm, *stay, remain.*

mōveō, ērē, mōvī, mōtūm,	<i>move, remove.</i>
obtīneō, ērē, uī, obtentūm,	<i>hold, obtain.</i>
possessiō, ūnīs, f.	<i>possession.</i>
vīcūs, ī, m.	<i>village.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Germāni multos vīcos dēlēvērant. 2. Aliud¹ īter hă-
bēbant nullum. 3. Quām² plūrīmas cīvītātes hăbēbant.
4. Allobrōges trans Rhōdānum vīcos possessiōnesquē³ hăbē-
bant. 5. Puēros⁴ littēras⁴ dōceāmus. 6. Dicīt mātrem⁵
filias littēras dōcēre. 7. In Galliā ultēriōre multos annos⁶
mănēbīmus. 8. Caesar sēnātōrem hortātur ut⁷ ī castris
multos menses maneat.⁷ 9. Regnum ī Sēquānis multos annos
obtīnuērat. 10. Divīco lēgātiōnis lōcum princīpem obtīnēbat.
11. Sī īmpērātor castra mōveat, mīltēs fortius⁸ pugnent.
12. Castra⁹ movēre¹⁰ cēlērius nōn pōtuērunt.¹¹ 13. Itīnērē¹²
Helvētios prōhībēre nōn pōtērunt.¹¹ 14. Helvētii suis fīnībus
Germānos prōhībēbant. 15. Proxīmum¹³ īter īn ultēriōrem
Galliam pēr Alpes est. 16. Sēd ī summo jūgo duas (*two*)
lēgiōnes,¹⁴ quas (*which*) ī Galliā cītēriōre proxīme conscrip-
sērat (*he had enlisted*), et omnia auxīlia¹⁴ collōcāri¹⁵ jussit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Which adjectives have their Genitive in iūs and Dative in i ? (24)

² See LN. XLII., Note 7. ³ See LN. XXIII., Vx., Note.

⁴ See 71.

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ How is ut — māneat to be translated ? See LN. XXXVIII., Note 3.

⁸ From what adjective is fortīter derived ?

⁹ What does castra signify in the Singular ?

¹⁰ See 69.

¹¹ How do pōtuērunt and pōtērunt differ from each other ?

¹² See LN. XLIII., Note 6.

¹³ proxīmum, shortest.

¹⁴ lēgiōnes and auxīlia are subjects of collōcāri. (53)

¹⁵ collōcāri (*to be stationed*) with its subjects is object of jussit. (52)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

- in the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.
 1: A. & S. 223: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 289: G. 125;
 3: C. 75.
 'a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contīneō , ērē, uī, contentūm,	<i>hem in, bound.</i>
ōtīo , ūnīs, f.	<i>dominion, power.</i>
ōceānūs , ī, m.	<i>ocean.</i>
răpīnă , ae, f.	<i>plundering.</i>
servītus , ūtīs, f.	<i>slavery.</i>
tēneō , ērē, uī, tentūm,	<i>hold, keep.</i>
undīquē , adv.	<i>on all sides.</i>

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Una pars contīnētur¹ Gărumnā² flūmīne,³ Oceāno, fīnībus Belgārum. 2. Undīquē lōci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii contīnēntur. 3. Summus mons⁵ ā Tīto Lăbiēno tēnēbātur. 4. Nunciat summum montem ā hostībus tentum essē. 5. Sī summus mons ā hostībus teneātut, nostri mīlītēs quām acerrīme⁶ pugnent. 6. Aedui ī servītūte atquē ī dītiōne Germānōrum tenti sunt. 7. Caesar mēmōriā tēnēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesāre răpīnis⁷ prōhībēbātur. 9. Summus mons ā hostībus tēnēri nōn pōtest.⁸ 10. Galli tēnēri ī servītūte nōn pōtērant.⁸ 11. Obsīdes multos annos ī servītūte tēnēbāntur. 12. Sī multos annos ī servītūte tenti essēmus, nōn fēlices fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top⁵ of the mountain will be held by Caesar. 2. The top of the mountain could⁸ not be held by Caesar. 3. He says (that) the top of the monntain was held by the Germans.

4. If Cassius should keep in memory.
5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country.
6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans.
7. They were held in slavery many years.⁹

Notes and Questions.

¹ Define the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? Name the three Stems of *contineo*. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed?

² See 54.

³ See 25.

⁴ *lōci nātūrā*, by the character of their country.

⁵ *summus mons*, the top of the mountain; lit., the highest mountain.

⁶ From *acriter*; from what adjective is *acriter* derived?

⁷ *rāpinis*; translate by the Singular; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ When *possum* governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can*, if in the Present Tense; by *could*, if in a Past Tense; e. g. *tēnēri pōtēst*, can be held; *tēnēri pōtērat*, could be held.

⁹ See 93.

LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 135: A. & S. 223, use *moneor* for model: B. 46; 55; 93: B. & M. 304; 308: G. 211; 143; 144: H. 231, 1-3; Note under 232: C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

intueor, *ērī*, *intuitūs* *sūm*,¹ look at.

nē, adv. *not*, used with the Subjunctive and Imperative.

nē, conj. *that not*; after verbs of fearing, *that*; used with the Subjunctive.

pollicēor, *ērī*, *pollicitūs* *sūm*, promise.

vēreor, *ērī*, *vēritūs* *sūm*, fear.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frūmentum pollīcentur.² 2. Aedui frūmentūm
publīce pollīcīti ērant. 3. Vēreor nē Aedui Rōmānis³ frū-
mentum pollīceantur.⁴ 4. Nē⁵ frūmentum pollīceāmur.⁶ 5. Sī
Aedui frūmentum mātūrum pollīcīti essent, Caesar fēlix fuis-
set. 6. Rōmāni nōn hostem verentur sēd angustias itinēris.
7. Nē Divitiāci anīmūm offendēret (*he should offend*) vērēbā-
tur. 8. Nunciat⁷ Sēquānos terram intuēri. 9. Nēgat⁸ Rō-
mānos hostem vērītos essē. 10. Sōlem intuēri nōn possūmus.
11. Nē sōlem intueāmur. 12. Vērēbāmur nē hostes agros
nostros pōpūlārentur. 13. Vērēmur nē hostes agros nostros
pōpūlentur. 14. Vērēmīni nē hostes agros vestros pōpūlentur.
15. Rōmānis frūmentum nōn pollīcīti sūmus. 16. Rōmāni
Helvētiis obsīdes nōn pollīcēbuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have
promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they⁹ have promised
ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise⁴ corn to
our enemies.³ 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls.
6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the diffi-
culties of the route. 8. I fear that the route will be⁴ dan-
gerous.

Notes and Questions.¹ See LN. XXXV., Vy., 1.² Define a Deponent Verb. (77)

What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

³ See 39.⁴ When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a *verb of fearing* which
is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative*: nē Aedui pol-
līceantur, *that the Aedui will promise*.⁵ nē is herē an adverb.⁸ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.⁶ See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.⁹ *they, eos.*⁷ What is the object of nunciat?

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. 68; 69: A. & S. 126; 127: B. 142; 143, REM. 2: B. & M. 137: G. 67; 68: H. 116, 1, 2; 118, (1): C. 34.

97. Declension of dōmūs. A. & G. 70, f: A. & S. 130: B. 143, REM. 8: B. & M. 144: G. 67, 2: H. 119: C. 34, 1.

VOCABULARY.

adventūs, ūs, m.	arrival, approach.
commōveo, ērě, commōvi, commōtum,	move, disturb.
conspectūs, ūs, m.	sight; view.
cornū, ūs, n.	horn; of an army, wing.
dextēr, dextrā, dextrūm,	right.
dōmūs, ūs, f.	house; dōmi, at home.
ěquītātūs, ūs, m.	cavalry.
exercitūs, ūs, m.	army.
impētūs, ūs, m.	attack.
paenē, adv.	almost.
sempr̄, adv.	always.
sustineō, ērě, uī, sustentūm,	sustain, withstand.

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesāris adventū.¹
2. Helvētii Caesār̄is adventū² commōti sunt.
3. In conspectū hostium.
4. Omnia³ ex conspectū.
5. Paenē īn conspectū exercitūs nostri⁴ agri vasantur.
6. Cūm ěquītātū Helvētiōrum.
7. Magnum nūmērum ěquītātūs sempr̄ hābēbat.
8. Equītātūs sustinēbat hostium impētūm.
9. Lābiēnus exercituī⁵ Rōmāno prae-fuit.
10. Hostes impētūs mīlītūm sustinēre nōn pōtuērunt.
11. Equītātūm omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) qui⁶ impētūm hostium sustineat.⁶
12. Nē hostium adventū commōveāmur.
13. A dextro cornū; ad dextrum cornū.
14. Caesar dōmi fuit.
15. Sēquāni ītērē⁷ exercitūm nos-trum prōhībēre cōnāntur.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 16. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (8) What is the *Stem-Ending* of each? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension?

² See 79.

³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁴ *nostri* modifies *exercitūs*.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *qui — sustineat, to withstand.*

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. NOTE; 72; 73; 74, d: A. & S. 132, a; 133 (2), (3): B. 144, NOTE; 145, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. *all of 146; 147*: G. 69, REMARKS 1, 2; 70: H. 120, 1, 2; 122; 123: C. 35.

VOCABULARY.

commeātūs, ūs, m.	<i>supplies, provisions.</i>
compārō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>prepare.</i>
diēs, diēī, m.	<i>day.</i>
fidēs, fidēī, f.	<i>faith, pledge, promise.</i>
perniciēs, perniciēī, f.	<i>ruin, destruction.</i>
prōfectio, ūnīs, f.	<i>departure.</i>
rēs, rēī, f.	<i>thing, affair.</i>
spēs, spēī, f.	<i>hope, expectation.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Cūm perniciē¹ exercitūs.
2. Ad suam perniciēm.
3. Uno diē.
4. Diem dīcunt (*they appoint*).
5. Sīnē spē.
6. In mēliōrem² spēm.
7. Magnam īn spēm.
8. Magnas spēs habēmus.
9. Rēs Helvētiis³ enunciāta est.
10. Pūtat rēs Helvētiis enunciātas essē.
11. Omnes rēs ād prōfeciōnem compārātae sunt.
12. Caesar paucos diēs⁴ ād⁵ Vēsontiōnem commeātūs causā⁶ mōrātur.
13. Caesar Gallis

- fīdēm dābit. 14. Vēreor nē Caesar Helvētiis fīdēm det.¹
 15. Sī Caesar Germānis fīdēm det, Rōmāni nōn laetentur.
 16. Caesar Divitiāco⁸ maxīmam fīdēm hābēbat. 17. Germānis parvam hābet fīdēm. 18. Caesāri fīdēm hābeāmus.⁹

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near⁵ Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give⁷ a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in⁸ the Helvetii. 9. They have very little¹⁰ confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the Stem of **perniciēs, diēs, spēs, fīdēs**? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

² See **84**.

³ See **39**.

⁴ See **93**.

⁵ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

⁶ See General Vocabulary under **causā**.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ **Divitiāco** — **fīdem hābēbat**, *had* — *confidence* IN *Divitiacus*; lit., *had confidence* TO *Divitiacus*. See **39**.

⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁰ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.



LESSON XLI X.

VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation.
A. & G. 131: A. & S. 222 **rēgo**: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 292: G. 131; 132: H. 209; 241-248: C. 76.

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending ; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **i**. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **o** ; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **e**.

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Tense-Sign ; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending ; this is **a** in the First Singular, elsewhere **e**.

VOCABULARY.

contendō,	ěrē,	contendī,	contentūm,	<i>hasten, march rapidly.</i>
dīmittō,	ěrē,	dīmisī,	dīmissūm,	<i>dismiss.</i>
gērō,	ěrē,	gessī,	gestūm,	<i>carry, carry on.</i>
mittō,	ěrē,	mīsī,	missūm,	<i>send.</i>
tollō,	ěrē,	sustūlī,	sublātūm,	<i>lift, take away.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar īn Itāliam magnis ītīnērībus¹ contendit. 2. Caesar ād hostes contendit ēquītātumquē omnem mittit.² 3. Caesārem hortēmūr ūt ād hostes contendat. 4. Helvētii lēgātos ād Caesārem mittunt. 5. Helvētii exercītum Rōmānum sūb jūgum³ mīsērunt. 6. Nunciat Helvētios exercītum Rōmānum sūb jūgum mīsissē. 7. Impērātor cēlērītēr concīlīum dīmittit. 8. Consul spēm fūgāe tollēbat. 9. Tollē, consul, spēm fūgāe. 10. Belgae cūm Germānis continentēr bellum gessērunt. 11. Sī omnes rēs ād prōfectiōnēm compārātē sint, ī Galliam ultēriōrem contendāmūs. 12. Vērēmur ūt⁴ rex cūm hostībus bellum gērāt.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul. 2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul. 3. The Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.⁶ 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke. 5. The king will have taken

away the hope of flight. 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

¹ magnis itinēribus, by long marches. See 54.

² Name the Stems of mittō. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?

³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under jūgum.

⁴ ut after verbs of fearing is to be rendered *that not*.

⁵ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁶ What question does "many years" answer? (93)



LESSON L.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE : THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation.
A. & G. 131: A. & S. 223 rēgor: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 293: G. 133; 134: H. 210: C. 76.

See also 73, a, of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

cīngō,	ĕrē,	cīnxī,	cīncētūm,	surround, encircle.
dēlīgō,	ĕrē,	dēlēgī,	dēlectūm,	select, choose.
dīcō,	ĕrē,	dīxī,	dīctūm,	say, tell.
dūcō,	ĕrē,	duxī,	ductūm,	lead, draw.
Xvincō,	ĕrē,	vīcī,	victūm,	conquer.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Exercītus Rōmānus ab Helvētiis sūb jūgum missus est.¹
2. Orgētōrix dēlīgitūr.¹ 3. Cassius lēgātus² dēlīgetūr. 4. Vix singūli carri dūcēbantūr. 5. Vix singūli carri pēr angustias

ducti ērant. 6. Paenē tōtum oppidūm flūmīne³ cingitūr.
 7. Nē āb hostībus³ vincāmur. 8. Sī āb hostībus victī es-
 sēmus, victoriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Sī Caesar exercitū⁶
 praesit, nōn vincāmīnī. 10. Nōn impērātor² dēlīgēris.
 11. Carri pēr angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁷ 12. Germāni ā
 Rōmānis vincī nōn pōtērant.⁷ 13. Urbs cingitūr; urbs cin-
 gētur. 14. Castra vallo¹⁰ cincta sunt. 15. Sī castra vallo
 cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Sī Caesar impērātor dēlīgātur,
 omnes laetentur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.³ 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.³ 6. We fear that you will be conquered⁸ by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible⁹ will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that¹¹ Titus will not¹¹ send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

1 What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice? Which verbs have a Passive Voice? ANS. *Transitive Verbs*, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)

² See 64.

³ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁴ See 79 and Ex. 2.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁹ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

¹⁰ See 54.

¹¹ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of **audiō**, Active and Passive.
 A. & G. 132 : A. & S. 222; 223 : B. 83; 84 : B. & M. 300; 301 :
 G. 135-138 : H. 211; 212 : C. 78.

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u** : e. g. audi-**u**-nt, audi-**u**-nto ; see also **99**, *b* and *c*.

VOCABULARY

audiō,	īrē, īvī, ītūm,	hear.
con-vēniō,	īrē, vēnī, ventūm,	come together, assemble.
mūniō,	īrē, īvī, ītūm,	fortify.
per-vēniō,	īrē, vēnī, ventūm,	come to, arrive.
vēniō,	īrē, vēnī, ventūm,	come.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puěri multas res audiunt.
2. Multae res ā puěris audiuntur.
3. Mīlites impératōrem audient.
4. Impérator ā mīlītibus audiētūr.
5. Belgae tōtūm oppīdum mūnīvērunt.¹
6. Tōtūm oppīdum ā Belgis mūnītūm est.
7. Sī castra ā mīlītibus mūnītā essent, hostes nōn vīcissent.
8. Mūniāmūs urbem Rōmam.
9. Caesar īn Galliam cītēriōrem vēnīt.²
10. Vēnī, vīdī,³ vīcī.³
11. Ad rīpam Rhōdāni omnes convēniunt.
12. Mīlites hortātūr ūt ād rīpam Rhōdāni convēniant.
13. In fīnes Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ūbi (*where*) proptēr vulnēra mīlītūm paucos dies⁴ mōrātī sunt.
14. Helvētiī īn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnērant⁵ et agros pōpūlābantūr.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things.
2. Many things are heard by the soldiers.
3. The ambassador will be heard.

4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural ?
 - 2 How does *vēnīt* differ from *vēnīt* in meaning ?
 - 3 *vidi* from *videō*; *vici* from *vincō*.
 - 4 See 93.
 - 5 How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action ? (42)
 - 6 How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action ? (36)
 - 7 How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another ?
-

LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of *căpiō*.
 A. & G. 131, page 100: A. & S. 222; 223: B. 92: B. & M. 294-297: G. 139; 140: H. 217-219: C. 77.

VOCABULARY.

<i>căpiō</i> ,	<i>capērē</i> ,	<i>cēpī</i> ,	<i>captūm</i> ,	<i>take, capture.</i>
<i>cūpiō</i> ,	<i>cūpērē</i> ,	<i>cūpīvī</i> ,	<i>cūpītūm</i> ,	<i>desire.</i>
<i>făciō</i> ,	<i>făcērē</i> ,	<i>fēcī</i> ,	<i>factūm</i> ,	<i>make, do; itēr făcērē, to march.</i>
<i>fōdiō</i> ,	<i>fōdērē</i> ,	<i>fōdī</i> ,	<i>fossūm</i> ,	<i>dig.</i>
<i>fūgiō</i> ,	<i>fūgērē</i> ,	<i>fūgī</i> ,	<i>fūgītūm</i> ,	<i>flee.</i>
<i>jăciō</i> ,	<i>jăcērē</i> ,	<i>jēcī</i> ,	<i>jactūm</i> ,	<i>throw, hurl.</i>
<i>răpiō</i> ,	<i>răpērē</i> ,	<i>răpuī</i> ,	<i>raptūm</i> ,	<i>seize, plunder.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Rōmānī multa opp̄ida cēpērunt.
2. Multa opp̄ida ā Rōmānis captā sunt.
3. Helvētii magnas possessiōnes cūpient.

4. Magnae possessiōnes āb Helvētiis cūpientūr. 5. Nostri mīlītes tēla īn hostes jāciēbant.¹ 6. Germāni castra Rōmā-nōrum rāpuērunt. 7. Germāni magnam fossam fōdērant. 8. Fossas multas ēt magnas fōdērimūs. 9. Fūgitē,² mīlītes,³ īn urbem. 10. Dux nunciat hostes⁴ oppīdum captūrōs⁵ essē. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppīdum ā mīlītībus captūm essē.⁶ 12. Una pars īnītium ā flūmine Rhōdāno cāpit. 13. Lēgātus vēretūr nē lōcus ex internēcīōne exercītūs nōmen cāpiāt.⁷ 14. Helvētii pēr prōvinciam nōstram īter fāciēbant. 15. Helvētii pēr agrum Sēquānorūm īter ī Aeduōrum fīnes fācient. 16. Iter faciāmūs īn fīnes Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus mīlītes hōrtā-bātūr quō īter cēlērius⁹ fācērent.⁸ 18. Mīlītes īter cēlērius fācēre nōn possunt.

Notes.

¹ Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form ; compare sentences 3 and 4.

² See 47.

³ See LN. V., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 53.

⁵ Why **captūrōs** and not **captūrūs** ?

⁶ **captūm esse**, *had been taken*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁹ **cēlērius**, an *adjective*, modifying **iter**.



LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Deponent Verbs. A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 223, use **rēgor** and **audior** for models : B. 93 : B. & M. 309; 310 : G. 145-148 : H. 231, 1-3 ; Note under 232 : C. p. 100.

104. Ablative with certain Deponents. A. & G. 249 : A. & S. 419 : B. 258, a : B. & M. 880 : G. 405 : H. 421, I. : C. 167

VOCABULARY.

mētior,	mētīrī,	mensūs	sūm,	measure, deal out.
nītor,	nītī,	nīsūs or nixūs	sūm,	strive, endeavor.
ōrior,	ōrīrī,	ortūs	sūm,	rise, begin.
pōtior,	pōtīrī,	pōtītūs	sūm,	get possession of, obtain.
prōfīcīscor,	prōfīcīscī,	prōfectūs	sūm,	set out, depart.
sēquor,	sēquī,	sēcūtūs	sūm,	follow.
ūtor,	ūtī.	ūsūs	sūm,	use, make use of.

Conjugate : name the Stems;¹ give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostes sēquitūr.
2. Caesar paucos dies³ mōrātūs² hostes sēcūtūs est.
3. Liscus cūm lēgiōnībus ē castris prōfectūs est.
4. Caesar mātūrat āb urbe prōfīcīscī.
5. Belgae āb extrēmis Galliae fīnībus⁴ ōriuntur.
6. Mīlītes frūmento nōn ūtentūr.
7. Frūmento ūtī⁵ hōmīnes nōn pōtērant.
8. Pāce ūtī nōn possūmus.
9. Impēdīmentis castrisquē nostri⁶ pōtītī sunt.
10. Nītēbantūr ūt impērio pōtīrentūr.
11. Nītentūr čt⁷ tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtīantūr.⁷
12. Galli nītuntūr ūt impēdīmentis pōtīantūr.
13. Dux vīrīs⁸ frūmentum mētītūr.
14. Liscus mīlītībus frūmentum nōn mensus ērat.
15. Nītāmūr ūt tōtīus Itāliae impērio pōtīāmūr.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy.
2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls.
3. The Gauls were following our army.
4. When I shall have set out from the city.
5. We shall make use of the corn.
6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of⁷ the camp.
7. Let us strive to get possession of⁷ the baggage.
8. They attempt to get possession of⁵ the camp.
9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ **The Present Stem** of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending **rī** in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and the Ending **i** in the Third (cf. 28): e. g. HORTĀRī, VĒRĒRī,

PÖTIRI, and ÚTI are Present Infinitives ; HORTA, VĚRE, POTI, and ÚT their Present Stems.

The **Supine Stem** of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending ūs (cf. 50) : e. g. HORTĀTŪS, VĚRÍTŪS, PÖTÍTŪS, and ūSŪS are Perfect Participles ; HORTĀT, VĚRÍT, PÖTÍT, and ūS their Supine Stems.

² mōrātūs, having delayed.

³ dies, why in the Accusative ?

⁴ finībūs, limits.

⁵ See 69.

⁶ nostri, our men.

⁷ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ See 39.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs ? What is a Deponent Verb ? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent* ? See under dēpōno, General Vocabulary.

LESSON LIV.

GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 258, b : A. & S. 425, 426 (1), a : B. 221, RULE XII. : B. & M. 938 : G. 410 : H. 380, I., II., 2, 1 : C. 130.

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 258, c, d : A. & S. 425 ; 426 (1), (2), a : B. 249, RULE XXXVII. : B. & M. 932 ; 933 : G. 412, REM. 1 : H. 425, I., II. ; 426, 2 : C. 148, 1, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 258, a : A. & S. 425 ; 426 (1), (2) : B. 254, RULE XXXIX. : B. & M. 941 ; 943 : G. 411 : H. 412, I., II., 1 : C. 182.

a. **105** answers the question *Whither?* or *To what place?* **106**, *Where?* or *In what place?* **107**, *Whence?* or *From what place?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesar Gēnāvam (**105**) contendit, Caesar hastened TO GENEVA.
2. Liscus Aquilēiae (**106**) fuit, Liscus was IN AQUILEIA.
3. Cassius Rōmā (**107**) vēnit, Cassius came FROM ROME.
4. Divitiācus plūrīmūm dōmī pōtērat, Divitiacus was very powerful AT HOME.

VOCABULARY.

dōmūs, ūs, f.*house, home : dōmī, at home ;**dōmūm, home, homeward ;**dōmō, from home.***nīhīl** (an indecl. neuter noun),*nothing.***Noviodūnūm, ī, n.***Noviodunum.***plūrīmūs, ā, ūm,***most : plūrīmūm possē, to***prae-mittō, ērē, mīsī, missūm,***be very powerful.***rē-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm,***send forward.***Suēvī, ōrūm, m.***return.***trā-dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm,***the Suevi.***lead across.**Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Consūles Rōmae plūrīmos¹ annos² fuērunt. 2. Rōmā vēnērunt lēgāti Gēnāvam. 3. Divitiācus plūrīmūm³ dōmī⁴ atquē īn rēliquā Galliā pōtērat.³ 4. Impērātor omnem ēqui-tātūm Noviodūnum prāemīsit. 5. Dōmūm mittām pueros inālos. 6. Suēvi ād rīpas Rhēni vēnērant ēt dōmūm rēvertē-bantūr. 7. Nītēmur ūt Noreiam rēvertāmūr. 8. Sī Rōmā prōfīciscāmūr,⁵ nōn dōmūm rēvertāmūr. 9. Vērēmūr ūt⁶ nostri āmīci Rōmae multos dies māneant.⁶ 10. Helvētii jām pēr angustias ēt fīnes Sēquānōrum suas cōpias trāduxērant ēt ī Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnērant.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many¹ days.² 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not⁶ return⁶ home. 6. Let⁷ us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly⁸ they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.² See **93.**³ See EX. 4.⁴ How is *dōmūs* declined? (**97**)⁵ How is the Present Subjunctive with *sī* translated? (LN. XXIX., Ex. 1.)⁶ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4 and LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.⁷ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.⁸ See LN. LII., NOTE 9 and LN. XXXVI., Ex 5.

E. i f b e n n w o r k

LESSON LV.

NUMERALS.—EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of *ūnūs*, *duō*, *trēs*, and *millē*. A. & G. 94, *a—e*: A. & S. 146; 156; 157 (1), (2); 158—160; 161, *g*: B. 167; 168, REM. 1—5: B. & M. 201—204; 206; 207: G. 92—94; 308: H. 171; 172; 174—179: C. 54; 55, 1, 3.

109. Extent in Space. A. & G. 257: A. & S. 423: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 958: G. 335; 336: H. 379: C. 129, I. This answers such questions as *How far?* *How deep?* *How high?* *How wide?* *How long?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Castrā āb urbē mīliā passuūm octō ābsunt,** *the camp is EIGHT MILES distant from the city.*
2. **Flūmēn pēdēs vīgintī altūm est,** *the river is TWENTY FEET deep.*
3. **Mons pēdēs nongentōs altūs est,** *the mountain is NINE HUNDRED FEET high.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>altēr, altērā, altērūm,</i>	<i>one of two, the other.</i>
<i>lātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>wide.</i>
<i>longūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>long.</i>
<i>passūs, ūs, m.</i>	<i>step, pace; millē passūs, a mile; lit., a thousand paces.</i>

pēs, pēdīs, m.	foot.
pōnō, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsítūm,	place, put; castrā pōnērē, to pitch a camp.
vīgiliā, ae, f.	watch; dē prīmā vīgiliā, in the first watch.

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies ; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pēdes quadrāgintā trēs lātum.¹ 2. Mons dēcēm mīliā² trēcentos pēdes altus est. 3. Fossa pēdes trēcentos longa est, sex pēdes alta. 4. Fossa pēdes quindēcim lāta est. 5. Mīlītes duas fossas quindēcim pēdes lātas fōdērunt. 6. Caesar dōmum³ tertiam⁴ lēgiōnem mīsit. 7. Dē tertīā vīgiliā⁵ centūm ēt trīgintā quinquē mīlītes praemittit. 8. Mīliā passuum⁶ triā āb urbe castra pōsuīt. 9. Oppīda ād⁷ quadrāgintā ēt vīcos ād quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant ītīnēra duō; ūnum pēr Sēquānos; altērum pēr prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa⁸ ērat cāpītum Helvētiōrum⁹ mīliā dūcentā ēt sexāgintā triā. 12. Circīter mīliā hōmīnum centūm ēt trīgintā sūperfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What does lātum modify ? What is it modified by ?

² Spelled also with two l's : milliā.

³ See 105.

⁴ What kind of a numeral is tertiam ?

⁶ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named *prima vigilia, secunda vigilia, tertia vigilia, quarta vigilia*.

⁶ A Roman pace (*passus*) as a measure of length was about five feet.

⁷ *ād* with numerals signifies *about*.

⁸ *summa, the sum total.*

⁹ *căpītum Helvētiōrum, of the Helvetii; lit. of the heads of the Helvetii.*



LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. 77, 6, a: A. & S. 300, a: B. 151: B. & M. 176: H. 125; 126: C. 106, 1, 2.

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 424: B. 252, RULE XXXVIII.: B. & M. 949: G. 392: H. 429: C. 185. The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When?* *At what time?* *Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See 93.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Diē septimō pervenīt,** *he arrived ON THE SEVENTH DAY.*
2. **Proximā noctē castrā mōvit,** *THE NEXT NIGHT he broke up camp.*

VOCABULARY.

dī-vidō, vīdērē, vīsī, vīsūm,	<i>divide, separate.</i>
in-cōlō, cōlērē, cōlūī, cultūm,	<i>inhabit, dwell.</i>
jusjūrandūm; jūrisjūrandī, n.	<i>oath.</i>
lācūs, ūs, m.	<i>lake.</i>
mensīs, īs, m.	<i>month.</i>
pōtentēs, pōtentīs, adj.	<i>able, powerful.</i>
prō, prep. w. abl.	<i>before, for.</i>
respūblīcā, rēspūblīcae, f.	<i>republic, commonwealth.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Galli Rōmānis¹ jusjūrandūm dēdērunt. 2. Dixit Gallos Rōmānis jusjūrandūm dēdisse.² 3. Multas res jūrējūrando³

sanxērunt (*they ratified*). 4. In⁴ rempublīcam lēgātus sex lēgiōnes duxit. 5. Prō rēpublīca; prō castris. 6. Pěr trēs pōtentissimos pōpūlos tōtīus⁵ Galliae. 7. In fīnes Lingōnum die quarto pērvēnērunt. 8. Proxīma nocte dē quarta vīgīlia⁶ castra mōvērunt. 9. Proxīmo die Caesar ē castris cōpias suas ēduxit. 10. Sōlis occāsu suas cōpias Arioquistus ī castra rēduxit. 11. Dōmī⁷ mansērunt septēm menses.⁸ 12. Quadrāgintā trēs annos regnāvit. 13. Nītāmur⁹ ūt sōlis occāsu prōfīcīscāmur.¹⁰ 14. Gallia est¹¹ omnis dīvīsa¹¹ in partes trēs, quārum (*of which*) ūnam¹² incōlunt Belgae, āliam¹² Aquītāni,¹³ tertiam¹² Galli.¹³ 15. A lăcu Lemanno ād montem Jūram fossam vīgīntī pēdes¹⁴ lātam fōdit. 16. Dē tertia vīgīlia cūm lēgiōnībus trībus ē castris pōfectus est. 17. Dīcit hostes sūb monte castra pōsuisse mīlia¹⁴ passuum āb nostris castris octō.¹⁵

Notes.

¹ See 39.² See LN. XVII.³ See 54.⁴ in, *against*.⁵ Which adjectives are declined like tōtus? (24)⁶ See LN. LV., NOTE 5.⁷ See 106.⁸ See 93.⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.¹⁰ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.¹¹ est — dīvīsa is the same as dīvīsa — est.¹² Understand partem.¹³ Subject of incōlunt understood.¹⁴ See 109.¹⁵ octō modifies mīlia.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of *ěgō*, *tū*, *suī*. A. & G. 98, 1, 2, b, 3; 99, d, e: A. & S. 178; 179; 186; 431, e; 449, (1): B. 171; 172, a, b, REM. 2; 173, a: B. & M. 230-232; 234; 236: G. 97-100: H. 182, 184, 2, 3, 4, 6; 185: C. 57, 1.

Translate and parse.

1. Egō¹ sum mǎlus² sěd tū es bōnus. 2. Egō vōs süb jǔgum mittam. 3. Nōs vōbīs³ āmīci sūmus. 4. Nunciat nōbīs tē vēnisse. 5. Egō dē prīma vīgīlia pŕofectus essem, sī tū vēnisses. 6. Nostrā consīlia hostībus ēnunciantur. 7. Obsides intēr sēsē⁴ dant. 8. Intēr sē jusjūrandum dant. 9. Omnes linguā,⁶ instītūtis,⁶ lēgībus⁶ intēr sē⁵ diffērunt (*differ*). 10. Helvētī suīs fīnībus⁷ Germānōs pŕohībēbant. 11. Caesar suōs mīlītes ūn Galliam mittet sēd ūn prōvinciam nostrōs.⁸ 12. Tuūs fīlius ūn Galliam cītēriōrem ūter fāciet.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home⁹ but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not¹⁰ be¹¹ friendly to us.

Notes.

¹ Form for parsing a pronoun. — ēgō is a personal pronoun ; declined, ēgō, meī, mīhī, mē, mē ; Plural, nōs, nostrūm or nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs ; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of sūm ; rule (see 32).

² See 64.

³ See 86.

⁴ inter sēsē, to each other ; lit. among themselves.

⁵ inter sē, from one another.

⁶ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ nostrōs, ours : sc. milītes.

⁹ See 105.

¹⁰ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

¹¹ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*) : DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of **hīc**, **illē**, **istē**, **ipsē**, **is**, **idēm**. A. & G. **100 - 102**: A. & S. **180 - 182**: B. **173**, b, 1-3: B. & M. **239**; **243**: G. **101**; **102**: H. **186**, I.-VI.: C. **59**; **60**.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōrūm¹ omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae. 2. Hī omnes linguā, instītūtis, lēgībus inter sē diffērunt. 3. Eōrum² ūnā pars ūnūtūm cāpit ā flūmīne Rhōdāno. 4. Mīnīme³ ād eōs mercātōres⁴ saepe commeant. 5. Eī filiam suam ūn matrī-mōnūm dat. 6. Is sībī⁵ lēgātōnēm ād cīvītātes suscēpit. 7. Eā res est⁶ Helvētiis ūnūciāta. 8. Eōdēm die⁷ cūm duābūs⁸ lēgiōnībus prōfīcīscētur ēt iīs⁹ dūcībus. 9. Ipsē¹⁰ ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābet. 10. Ipsī ūn eōrum¹¹ fīnībus bellum gērunt. 11. Mīlia¹² passuum triā⁸ āb eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iīsdēm¹³ nostra consilia hostībus ūnūciāntur. 13. Ipsē dē quarta vīgīlia eōdem ūtēnēre¹⁴ ād eōs contendit ēquītātūmque¹⁵ omnem antē sē mittit.

Notes.

¹ Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. **hī omnes diffērunt**, *all THESE differ*; **ad has suscipiōnes**, *to THESE suspicions*. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

² **is** is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person*, and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he*, *she*, *it*; e. g. **is sībī suscēpit**, *HE took upon himself*; **ād eōs**, *to THEM*; **ūn eōrūm finībus**, *in THEIR territory*; **ējūs milītes**, *HIS soldiers*; **eī dat**, *he gives to HIM*.

³ **mīnīme** modifies **saepe**.

⁵ See **67**.

⁷ See **111**.

⁴ See **32**.

⁶ **est ūnūciāta** = **ūnūciāta est**.

⁸ See **108**.

⁹ Is *iis* used substantively or adjectively?

¹⁰ *ipsē — häbet, he himself has.*

¹¹ See NOTE 2.

¹² See **109.**

¹³ When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one, man, men, persons, or soldiers*, if masculine; *thing or things*, if neuter: e. g. *hic est fortis, THIS ONE is brave, or THIS MAN is brave; āb iisdēm, by THE SAME PERSONS; idēm cōnāntur, they attempt THE SAME THING.*

¹⁴ *eōdem itinēre, by the same route.*

¹⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. 103; 104, *e*: A. & S. 184: B. 173, *c*, REM. 1: B. & M. 245: G. 103: H. 187, 2: C. 62, 1.

115. Agreement. A. & G. 198: A. & S. 342: B. 278, RULE LIII.: B. & M. 683; 684: G. 615; 616: H. 445, NOTE 1: C. 114, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Aquītānia ād eam partem Oceāni, quae est ād Hispāniām, pertinet,** *Aquitania extends to that PART of the Ocean WHICH is near Spain.*
2. **Flūmīne Rhēno, qui agrum Helvētiū ā Germānis dīvīdit,** *by the river RHINE, WHICH separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans.*
3. **Proxīmīquē sunt Germānis, qui buscum¹ bellum gērunt,** *and they are very near TO THE GERMANS, with WHOM they carry on war.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Proxīmīquē sunt Germānis,² qui³ trans Rhēnum incōlunt. 2. Ad montem Jūram, qui fīnes Sēquānōrum āb Helvētiis dīvīdit. 3. Ab Ocēlo, quōd est cītēriōris prōvīnciae

oppidum⁴ extrēnum. 4. Allobrōges, quī trans Rhōdānum vicos possessiōnesquē habēbant, ād Caesārem vēniunt. 5. Vōcat Castīcum, cūjūs⁵ pāter regnum multos annos⁶ obtīnuērat. 6. Pontem,⁷ qui est ād Gēnāvam, jūbet rescindi.⁸ 7. Undīque lōci nātūrā⁹ Helvētii contīnentur : ūna ex parte¹⁰ flūmīne¹¹ Rhēno¹² lātissīmo atquē altissīmo, qui¹⁶ agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit ; altera¹³ ex parte monte Jūrā altissīmo, qui est intēr Sēquānos ēt Helvētios ; tertīā¹⁴ lācu Lemanno ēt flūmīne Rhōdāno, qui prōvinciam nostram āb Helvētiis dīvidit.

Write in Latin.

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne.
2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain.
3. He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years.
4. The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva.
5. He came with the very¹⁵ soldiers whom we have seen.
6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

¹ Observe that cūm is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

² See 86.

³ Form for parsing a relative. — qui is a Relative Pronoun ; declined, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *cūjus*, etc. (*give its entire declension*) ; made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent **Germānis** (see 115) ; and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of incōlunt (32).

⁴ See 64.

⁵ cūjūs, whose.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ ūna ex parte, on one side.

¹¹ See 54.

¹² See 25.

¹³ alterā, second.

¹⁴ tertīā, sc. ex parte.

¹⁵ Translate *the very* by the proper case of ipsē.

¹⁶ A. & G. 199: A. & S. 343 a: B. 286, d: B. & M. 694: G. 616, 3, II: H. 445, 4: C. 113, 5.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*) : INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quiſ** and **qui**; of the Indefinites **ăliquīſ** and **quiſ**. A. & G. 104, a, e; 105, d : A. & S. 183; 184, a, b : B. 173, d, REM. 1, e, 1, 3 : B. & M. 246; 249-251; 1041, second part : G. 104, REMARK ; 105 : H. 188, I, II, 1, 3; 189; 190, 1, NOTE 1 : C. 62, 2, 4, 5, 13.

a. **ăli-quiſ** is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective*; as a *substantive* it is declined as follows :

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> ăli-quiſ,	ăli-quiđ,
	<i>Gen.</i> ăli-cūjūs,	ăli-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> ăli-cuī,	ăli-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> ăli-quěm,	ăli-quiđ,
	<i>Abl.</i> ăli-quō,	ăli-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> ăli-quiī,	
	<i>Gen.</i> ăli-quōrūm,	
	<i>Dat.</i> ăli-quībūs,	
	<i>Acc.</i> ăli-quōs,	
	<i>Abl.</i> ăli-quībūs.	

As an *adjective* it is declined :

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> ăli-quiſ and ăli-quiī,	ăli-quā,	ăli-quōd,
	<i>Gen.</i> ăli-cūjūs,	ăli-cūjūs,	ăli-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> ăli-cuī,	ăli-cuī,	ăli-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> ăli-quěm,	ăli-quām,	ăli-quōd,
	<i>Abl.</i> ăli-quō,	ăli-quā,	ăli-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> ăli-quiī,	ăli-quae,	ăli-quā,
	<i>Gen.</i> ăli-quōrūm,	ăli-quārūm,	ăli-quōrūm,
	<i>Dat.</i> ăli-quībūs,	ăli-quībūs,	ăli-quībūs,
	<i>Acc.</i> ăli-quōs,	ăli-quās,	ăli-quā,
	<i>Abl.</i> ăli-quībūs,	ăli-quībūs,	ăli-quībūs.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Qui**s mē vōcat? WHO calls me?
2. **Qu**em vīdisti? WHOM did you see?
3. **Qu**id dōmum nōn vēnērunt? WHY have they not come home?
4. **Ali**quēm ād mē mittent, they will send SOMEBODY to me.
5. **Ali**quid accīdit, SOMETHING has happened.
6. **S**i quid accīdat Rōmānis, if ANYTHING should happen to the Romans.

Parse the pronouns.

1. **Qui**s vōs vōcāvit? 2. **Qu**em vīdeo? 3. **Ali**quēm vīdi.
4. **Ali**quōs ād eūm mīsērunt. 5. **Ali**quēm lōcum occūpāvit.
6. Cūm āliquībūs princīpum vēnit. 7. **S**i **qui**s vēniat, laeter.
8. **Qu**id nōn dōmi fuisti? 9. Quae est mūlier quae vēnit?
10. **S**i **qui**d mīhi accīdat, nōn laetēris. 11. **S**i **qui**d Rōmānis accīdat, nōn fortītēr pugnent. 12. **Ali**quēm ād tē mit-tam.
13. **Ali**quīs dixit hunc essē consūlem. 14. Eūm hortābor ūt cūm āliquībūs mīlītum prōfīcīscātur.
15. Vēreor nē **qui**s vēniat. 16. Vereor nē **qui**d eī accīdat. 17. Ut āliquōs vīrōrum mittant, eos hortēmur.
18. Cūm āliquībūs princīpum illē vēnit.



LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. 25, *h*; 154, *a, b*; 208: A. & S. 74 (7); 562; 565; 566: B. 180, *the whole*; 330, RULE LXXXI.: B. & M. 488-503; 1369: G. 15, IV., 3; 476; 485; 494; 500; 501: H. 309-311; 554, I., 2: C. 100; 257.

VOCABULARY.

aut , conj.	<i>or; aut — aut, either — or.</i>
ēt — ēt , conj.	<i>both — and.</i>
itāquē , conj.	<i>accordingly, therefore.</i>

nám, conj.	<i>for.</i>
ně, nonně, nům,	interrogative particles (see NOTE 1).
něquě, conj.	<i>and not ; něquě — něquě, neither — nor.</i>
postquām, conj.	<i>after, as soon as.</i>
propt̄reā, adv.	<i>for this reason.</i>
quamquām, conj.	<i>although.</i>
quōd, conj.	<i>because.</i>
sěd, conj.	<i>but.</i>

Translate, and parse² the conjunctions.

1. Impérātor ét³ magnus ét fortis est.
2. Něquě³ magni něquě fortē sunt consūles.
3. Dux nōn magnus est sěd fortis.
4. Dumnōrīgem vōcat eīquě⁴ fīliam suam īn mātrīmōnium dat.
5. Itāquě rem suscēpit.
6. Hōrūm⁵ omnium fortissīmi sunt Belgae, propt̄reā quōd ā cultu atquě hūmānītāte prōvinciae longissime⁶ absunt.
7. Helvētii īter pēr prōvinciam fāciunt, propt̄reā quōd āliud⁷ īter hābent nullum.⁷
8. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus⁸ ; nám omnis cīvitas Helvētia īn quattuor pāgos dīvīsa est.
9. Aut³ suis fīnībus⁹ eos prōhībent, aut ipsī¹⁰ ī eōrum fīnībus bellum gērunt.
10. Miles, quamquām est fortis, nōn pugnābit.
11. Postquām Caesar pērvēnit, itā respondit.
12. Fortisnē¹¹ est consul?
13. Nonně fortē sunt consūles?
14. Nům fortis est consul?
15. Sī quid hābērem,¹² id tībi dārem.
16. Nītītūr ūt vincat.¹³
17. Nonně consūles dōmum vēnērant?
18. Nům Tītus lēgātus circūm Gēnāvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

¹ **ně** is used to ask for information merely ; **nonně**, when the answer *yes*, and **nům**, when the answer *no* is expected or implied ; e. g. **bōnusně est puer?** *is the boy good?* **nonně bōnus est puer?** *is not the boy good?* i. e. *the boy is good, is he not?* **nům bōnus est puer?** *the boy is not good is he?*

² *To parse a conjunction* is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate ; to which subdivision of its class it belongs ; what it connects : e. g. in sentence 6, **quōd** is a *subordinate conjunction*, because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause ; *causal*, because it introduces a reason ; it connects the subordinate clause **propt̄reā — absunt** with the principal clause **hōrūm — Belgae**.

⁸ When a conjunction is doubled, as **et — et, aut — aut**, the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

⁴ See **39** and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2. ⁵ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 1.

⁶ See LN. XLII.

⁷ See **24**.

⁸ Use the same word, **Tigurinus**, in translation.

⁹ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6. ¹⁰ What does **ipsi** emphasize?

¹¹ The interrogative particle **ně** is appended to the first word of its clause.

¹² **hābērem**, *I had.* ¹³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.



LESSON LXII.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the *Ablative Absolute*, *Subjunctive Mood*, and *Indirect Discourse*. A. & G. 171–182, *coarse and fine print*: A. & S. **309–315**: B. **203**, *a–g*; 288, *a–f*: B. & M. **1399–1401; 1404; 1405; 1407; 1408; 1411; 1413**: G. 192; 193; 474, 1–4; 475; 505–508: H. 345–351; 354–361: C. **107; 108**.

VOCABULARY.

cīvīs, īs, m. and f.

citizen.

in-fluō, fluērē, fluxī, fluxūm,

flow into, empty.

inter-fīciō, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm,

kill.

poscō, poscērē, pōposcī, (no supine)

demand.

postquām, conj.

after, as soon as.

re-spondeō, spondērē, spondī, sponsūm,

reply, answer.

Translate and analyze¹ the following sentences.

1. Ejus rēi pōpūlus Rōmānus est testis.
2. Divīco re-spondit² ējus rēi pōpūlum Rōmānum essē testem.
3. Hic pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium consūlem interfēcērat ēt ējus exercītum sūb jūgum mīsērat.
4. Postquām Caesar pervēnit, obsīdes pōposcit.
5. Flūmen³ est Arar, quōd ī Rhōdānum

influit. 6. Caesar ā lăcu Lemanno, qui ī flūmen Rhōdānum influit, ād montem Jūram, qui fīnes Sēquānōrum āb Helvētiis dīvīdit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis⁴ es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Rēlinquēbātur ūna pér Sēquānos via, quā proptēr angustias īre (*to go*) nōn pōtērant. 9. Ob eas causas eī mūnītiōni,⁵ quam fēcērat, Tītum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēni ūt tē vīdeam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home will they⁶? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., EXAMPLES and NOTES.

² What is the object of **respondit**?

³ See **64**.

⁴ See **64**; what is the subject of **es**?

⁵ See **67**.

⁶ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.

LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. 25, *e*; 289: A. & S. 542: B. 53, *d*: B. & M. 265, *last clause*: H. 548: C. 65, 4.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 290 : A. & S. 543-545 : B. 323, RULE LXXV. : B. & M. 1343 : G. 278; 279 : H. 550 : C. 249.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 292 : A. & S. 547 : B. 318 : B. & M. 1350 : G. 667-671 : H. 549, 1-5 : C. 250.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sēsē omnes flentes Caesāri ād pēdes prōjēcērunt,** all WEEPING threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.
2. **Liscus multos dies mōrātus prōfectus est,** *Liscus* HAVING DELAYED many days set out; or, *Liscus*, AFTER HE HAD DELAYED many days, set out.
3. **Caesar eōrum prēcībus adductus bellum suscēpit,** Caesar HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties undertook the war; or, Caesar, BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties, undertook the war.
4. **Helvētii ējus adventu commōti lēgātos mittunt,** the Helvētii BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DISTURBED) by his arrival send legates.

VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm,	lead to, influence.
fleō, flērē, flēvi, flētūm,	weep.
in-dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm,	lead into, induce.
pētō, pētērē, pētīvī and pētiī, pētītūm,	beseech, ask, beg for.
prō-jīciō, jīcērē, jēcī, jectūm,	throw forward; sē prōjīcērē, to throw one's self down.

Analyze, and parse the participles.

1. Omnes flentes¹ pācem pētiērunt. 2. Mūliēres flentes vīros² implōrābant. 3. Belgae spectant īn ōrientem sōlem. 4. Hostes īn nostros vēnientes tēla conjīcēbant. 5. Mil̄ites sēsē Tīto³ ād pēdes prōjīcient. 6. Helvētii his rēbus⁴ adducti⁵ cūm proxīmis cīvītātībus pācem confirmant. 7. Liscus ūrātiōne Caesāris adductus lōcūtus est. 8. Hac ūrātiōne adducti intēr sē⁶ jusjūrandum dant. 9. Is⁷ regni cūpīdītāte in-

ductus conjūratiōnem nōbīlītātis fēcit. 10. Sēquāni paucos dies mōrāti ād⁸ Gēnāvam p̄flecti sunt. 11. Helvētii omnium rērum īnōpiā adducti lēgātos ād eum⁷ mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertia vīḡlia p̄ffectus ād⁹ Gēnāvam p̄vēnit.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius.
2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy.
3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome.
4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.⁷
5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine.
6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.

² *vīros, husbands.*

³ See **39**; translate as if it were a Genitive.

⁴ See **54**.

⁵ Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

⁶ See LN. LVII., NOTE 4. ⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ *ād, towards, for.* ⁹ *ād, in the vicinity of.*

¹⁰ What participles has a transitive verb? See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.



LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. **255** and NOTE: A. & S. **422 d:** B. **264**, RULE **XLIX.**, *a-c*: B. & M. **964-966**: G. **408; 409**: H. **431**, 1, 2, 4: C. **187**, 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Marco Messālā ēt Marco Pīsōne consūlibus,** *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls*; or better, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.*
2. **Hoc responso dāto discessit,**
 - a. *this reply having been given*
 - b. *when this reply had been given*
 - c. *having given this reply*
 - d. *after giving this reply*
 - e. *after he had given this reply*

} *he departed.*

VOCABULARY.

con-vertō, vertēre, vertī, versūm,	<i>turn about, change.</i>
dis-cēdō, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm,	<i>depart.</i>
ībi, adv.	<i>there.</i>
rē-linquō, linquērē, līquī, lictūm,	<i>leave behind, leave.</i>
responsūm, ī, n.	<i>answer, reply.</i>
rē-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm,	<i>return.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Hāc ūrātiōne¹ hābitā² Caesar concīlium dīmīsit. 2. Hāc ūrātiōne āb Divitiāco hābitā omnes auxīlium pētiērunt. 3. Hāc ūrātiōne hābitā conversae sunt omnium mentes. 4. Convōcātis eōrum³ princīpībus Caesar grāvīter⁴ eos accūsat. 5. Marco Messālā ēt Marco Pīsōne consūlibus conjūrātiōnem nōbīlītātis fēcit. 6. Ibi Centrōnes⁵ lōcis sūpēriōrībus occūpātis ītīnērē⁶ exercītum prōhībērē cōnāntur. 7. Mūnītis castris duas ībī lēgiōnes rēliquit ēt partem auxiliōrum. 8. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciātō Suēvi dōmum⁷ rēverti coēpērunt (*began*). 9. Convōcātis eōrum princīpībus, quōrum⁸ magnam cōpīam īn castris hābēbat, grāvīter eos accūsat. 10. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciātō Suēvi, qui ād rīpas Rhēni vēnērant, dōmum rēverti coēpērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for⁹ peace.
2. After giving this reply all departed.
3. He came to Rome⁷ in the consulship of Titus and Cassius.
4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries.
5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The learner should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

² *hăbitā*, from *hăbēo*, signifying *hold, deliver, make*.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁴ From what adjective is *grăvīter* derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See LN. XLII.

⁵ See General Vocabulary.

⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁷ See **105**.

⁸ What is the gender and number of *quōrūm*? Why? (**115**) In what case is it? Why? (**40**)

⁹ *for* belongs to the *verb*; *peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative*.

**LESSON LXV.****IRREGULAR VERBS: FERO.**

123. Learn the entire conjugation of *fěrō*. A. & G. **139**: A. & S. **245**: B. **109**, IV.: B. & M. **422-424**: G. **186**: H. **292**: C. **85**, I.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis¹ auxīlīum fert.
2. Auxīlīum mīlītībus² ā dūce fertūr.
3. Sī dux suis auxīlīum fērāt,³ laetentur.³
4. Sī auxīlīum mīlītībus ā dūce fērātūr,³ laetentur.³
5. Ii⁴ suis auxīlīum ferrē nōn pōtērant.
6. Fertē, mīlītes, vestris¹ auxī-

lium. 7. Pōpūlus Rōmānus diū injūrias tūlīt. 8. Injūriae ā pōpūlo Rōmāno diū lātae sunt. 9. Pōpūlum Rōmānum hortātus est ūt⁵ diū injūrias ferrent.⁵ 10. Caesar dixīt pōpūlum Rōmānum diū injūrias tūlissē. 11. Nūmērus eōrum,⁴ qui⁶ arma fērēbant, magnus fuit. 12. Nūmērus eōrum, ā quībus arma fērēbantūr, magnus fuit. 13. Nūmērus eōrum, qui arma ferrē pōtērant, magnus fuit. 14. Nūmērus eōrum, ā quībus arma ferrī pōtērant,⁷ parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxīlium ferrēs, Galli vincērent. 16. Sī quis⁸ Rōmānis auxīlium tūlissēt, vīcissent.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as *men*, *soldiers*, *friends*, may be supplied; the *Plural Neuter*, where we may supply *things*, *possessions*.

² See 39.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See 115.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁸ What is *quis* when immediately preceded by *sī*, *nīsī*, *nē*, or *nūm*? How is it declined? See LN. LX.

LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF FERO.—ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. 253: A. & S. 412: B. 261, RULE XLVI.: B. & M. 889: G. 398: H. 424: C. 180. This answers the question *In what respect?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Virtūte praecēdunt**, *they excel* IN COURAGE.
2. **Nūmēro ād duōdēcim**, *about twelve* IN NUMBER.

VOCABULARY.

af-fērō,	af-ferrē,	at-tūlī,	al-lātūm,¹	<i>bring to, carry to, offer.</i>
con-fērō,	con-ferrē,	con-tūlī,	col-lātūm,	<i>bring together, carry together, collect.</i>
dif-fērō,	dif-ferrē,	dis-tūlī,	dī-lātūm,	<i>carry different ways; differ.</i>
in-fērō,	in-ferrē,	in-tūlī,	il-lātūm,	<i>bring into, bring upon, make upon.</i>
rē-fērō,	rē-ferrē,	rē-tūlī,	rē-lātūm,	<i>bring back, carry back.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Hi omnes lingua² instītūtis,² lēgībus² intēr sē diffērunt.
2. Oppīda sua omnia nūmēro² ād duōdēcim³ incendunt.
3. Eō⁴ circitēr⁵ hōmīnum nūmēro sēdēcim mīlia³ mīsit.
4. Helvētii rēlīquos Gallos virtūte praeceđunt. 5. Helvētii tōti Galliae⁶ bellum infērēbant. 6. Pars cīvītātis Helvētiae insignem cālāmītātem pōpūlo Rōmāno intūlērat. 7. Helvētii mīnus fācile fīnītīmis bellum inferrē pōtērant.⁷ 8. Obsīdes, arma, servi confēruntur. 9. Aedui dixērunt frūmentum conferri.⁸ 10. Caesar sarcīnas¹⁰ in ūnum lōcum conferri⁸ jussit.⁹ 11. Helvētii cūm omnībus suis carris sēcūti¹¹ impēdīmenta¹⁰ ī ūnum lōcum contūlērunt. 12. His responsis¹² ād Cae-sārem rēlātis ītērūm ād eum Caesar lēgātos cūm his mandātis mittit.

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from one another in language and laws.
2. They will burn their cities, about five in number. 3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.⁶ 4. I fear that the Romans will make¹³ war upon the Gauls. 5. Let¹⁴ us make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae. 6. The baggage will be collected into one place. 7. The Gauls, having fol-lowed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

1 Accent the compounds of *fēro* correctly: *áffērō*, *afférre*, *áttūli*, *allátum*.

2 See **124**.

3 See **108**.

4 *eō* is an adverb; see GEN. VY.

5 *circitēr* modifies the numeral.

6 See **67**.

7 *pōtērant*, *could*.

8 See **52**.

9 *jussit*, from *jūbeo*.

10 What is the difference between *sarcīnae* and *impēdimenta*? See General Vocabulary under *sarcīna* and *impēdimentum*.

11 *sēcūti* from *sēquor*; where is it made?

13 See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

14 See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLO** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
A. & G. 138: **A. & S. 242–244:** **B. 109, VI.:** **B. & M. 417–419:**
G. 189: **H. 293:** **C. 85, 3, 4, 5.**

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertō , <i>vertērē</i> , <i>vertī</i> , <i>versūm</i> ,	<i>turn away.</i>
mālō , <i>mallē</i> , <i>māluī</i> ,	<i>be more willing.</i>
nōlō , <i>nollē</i> , <i>nōluī</i> ,	<i>be unwilling, not wish.</i>
undē , adv.	<i>from which place, whence.</i>
vācō , ārē , āvī , ātūm ,	<i>be unoccupied.</i>
vōlō , <i>vellē</i> , <i>vōluī</i> ,	<i>be willing, wish.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. Aeduos¹ flāgītāre² Tītus frūmentum¹ vult. 2. Helvētiis³ bellum inferrē vōlūmūs. 3. Galli fīnītīmis bellum inferrē vōluērant. 4. Sī lēgātus pugnāre vēlīt, hostes fūgiant. 5. Nūm⁴ prōfīcisci dē tertia vīgīlia vultīs? 6. Dumnōrix quām⁵ plūrīmas cīvītātes hābēre vōlēbāt. 7. Consul impēdīmenta⁶ ūnum lōcum conferri vult. 8. Sī vīs mē⁶ flēre.

9. Montem ā Cassio occūpāri vōluīt. 10. Mons, quem⁶ ā Lābiēno occūpāri vōluīt, āb hostībus tēnētur. 11. Dīcit vellē sēsē⁶ dē rēpublīca⁷ cūm eo lōqui. 12. Caesār āb Helvētiis discēdēre² nōlēbāt. 13. Nōluīt eum lōcum vācāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesārem āb Helvētiis discēdēre² nollē. 15. Nōluīt eum lōcum, undē Helvētii discessērant, vācāre. 16. Vir injūrias diū ferre nōlēt. 17. Sī lēgātus īter fācēre nōlit, mīlītes laetēntur. 18. Vēreor nē⁸ dux suis auxīlium ferre nōlīt.⁸ 19. Iter āb Arāre Helvētii āvertērant ā quībus discēdēre nōlēbāt. 20. Pugnāre² Helvētii mālunt quām fūgēre.² 21. Nonnē māvīs tuis⁹ auxīlium ferrē quām fūgēre? 22. Omnes virtūte¹⁰ praecēdēre māvult quām essē consul. 23. Gallis prōdesse quām bellum inferrē māluit. 24. Exercītui praeesse mālēt quām dōmi¹¹ mānēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴? 2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.³ 3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing⁸ to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his⁹ (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor¹⁰ than to be rich.

Notes.

¹ See **71**.

² See A. & G. **271**, *a* : A. & S. **532** : B. **315**, *f*, 3 : B. & M. **1152** ; **1153** : G. **424** : H. **533** : C. **241**.

³ See **67**.

⁵ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

⁷ See **110**.

⁹ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.

¹¹ See **106**.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.

⁶ See **53**.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ See **124**.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*) : EO AND FIO.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **eō** and **fīō**. A. & G. 141; 142: A. & S. 246; 248, a: B. 109, II., V.: B. & M. 413-415; 426-429: G. 185; 188, REMARK: H. 294; 295, 1, 3: C. 85, 2, 7.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dē Caesāris adventu certior factus est**, *he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est hostes castra pōsuisse**, *Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. **Caesārem certiōrem faciunt hostes transīre**, *they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

certūs, ă, ūm,	<i>certain, sure; certior fīērī, to be informed; lit., to be made more certain.</i>
eō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>go.</i>
ex-eō, īrē, īī, ītūm,	<i>go out, go forth, depart.</i>
fīō, fīērī, factūs sūm,	<i>be made, become, occur.</i>
trans-eō, īrē, īī, ītūm,	<i>go across, cross.</i>

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. Dōmum¹ eunt ; Rōmam ībo ; Bibracte¹ eāmūs.² 2. Pēr angustias ībāmūs ; pēr Gallōrum fīnes īvērunt. 3. I,³ mīles, dōmum ; ītē, pueri, dōmum. 4. Hostes pēr nostram prōvinciam īvērant. 5. Lēgātus Bibracte īrē contendit. 6. Caesar cūm his quinque lēgiōnībus īrē⁴ contendit. 7. In eam partem Galliae ītūrōs⁵ essē Helvētios dixit. 8. Proptēr angustias īrē⁴ nōn pōtērant. 9. Helvētii dē fīnībus suis cūm omnībus cōpiis exībant. 10. Nītuntur ȳt ē fīnībus exeant.⁶ 11. Magnus nūmērus eōrum⁷ dōmo⁸ exībit. 12. Hic

pāgus ūnus dōmo patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā⁹ exiērāt.¹⁶
 13. Flūmen Helvētii rātībus¹⁰ transībant. 14. Sī flūmen transeant,¹¹ eos vincāmus. 15. Sī hostes Rhōdānum transīrē cōnentur, prōhībeāmus. 16. Boii¹² trans Rhēnum incōluērant ēt ū agrum Norīcum¹² transiērant. 17. Undīquē ūno tempōre ūn hostes impētus fīebāt. 18. His rēbus¹³ fīebāt. 19. Dē ējus⁷ adventu Helvētii certiōres facti sunt. 20. Caesar eōdem die āb explōrātōribus certior factūs suas cōpias praemittēre vōlēbat. 21. Duo vīri consūles¹⁴ factī ērunt. 22. Pēr explōrātōres Caesar certior factūs est Sēquānos pēr prōvinciam ūter fēcissē.¹⁵

Notes and Questions.

¹ What question do dōmum and Bibracte answer? See **105, a.**

² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7. ³ In what is the Imperative used? (**47**)

⁴ See **69.** ⁵ Why is itūros in the Acc. Plural?

⁶ How is the Subjunctive with ūt to be translated after verbs of *striving* and *endeavoring*?

⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ What question does dōmo answer?

⁹ See **111.**

¹⁰ rātis, is, f. *raft.*

¹¹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 1.

¹² See GEN. VY.

¹³ See **79.**

¹⁴ See **64.**

¹⁵ See Ex. 2.

¹⁶ exiērāt = exivērāt.



LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. **143**, a-c, Note: A. & S. **249** (1)-(3): B. **111**, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. **434-437**: G. **190**, 5: H. **297**, I., 2: C. **86**, 5, 6.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. **145**: A. & S. **250**: B. **112**; **113**: B. & M. **451**; **452**; **454**: G. **199**: H. **298**; **299**: C. **87**.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. **270**: A. & S. **531**: B. **315**, a, b: B. & M. **1147**: G. **423**: H. **538**: C. **236**, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Perfācīle est impērio pōtīri (129)**, it is very easy to get possession of the government.
2. **Mihi īre (129) līcet**, it is permitted me to go ; or, I may go.
3. **Mihi īre līcuit**, it was permitted me to go ; or, I might have gone.
4. **Rōgat ūt īd sībi fācēre līceat**, he asks that it be permitted him to do this ; better, he asks permission to do this.
5. **Rōgābat ūt īd sībi fācēre līcēret**, he was asking that it be permitted him to do this ; or, permission to do this.
6. **Me īre (129) ḥportet**, it is necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to go.
7. **Me īre ḥportuit**, it was necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to have gone.
8. **Dīcit me īre ḥportēre**, he says it is necessary that I should go ; or, he says that I ought to go.

Analyze and parse.

1. Měmīnērunt,¹ ūdērunt. 2. Měmīnēram Tītum, vīdēram Cassium. 3. Měmento věnīre²; dīcit sē měmīnis. 4. Liscus dixit Dumnōrīgem ūdisse Caesārem ēt Rōmānos. 5. Et tē ēt illum³ ūdērāmus. 6. Něquē⁴ mē něquē eum ūdit. 7. Divitiācus multis cūm lacrīmis Caesārem obsēcrāre⁵ coepit. 8. Suēvi, qui⁶ ād rīpas Rhēni věnērant, dōmum rēverti coepērunt. 9. Omnes mīlītes Rhōdānum transīre coepērunt. 10. Frūmentum⁷ conferri⁸ ḥportet. 11. Nos⁷ Rhēnum transīre ḥportuit.⁹ 12. Dīcit illum ād sē věnīre ḥportēre.¹⁰ 13. Caesārem dē ējus adventu certiōrem¹¹ fīéri ḥportuit. 14. Rōgāvērunt ūt sībi¹² līcēret concilium tōtīus Galliae convōcāre. 15. Rogāvit ūt sībi īre līcēret. 16. Tībi eo die īre līcēbit. 17. Perfācīle est tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtīri. 18. Tībi Caesārem certiōrem fācēre dē meo adventu līcet.¹³ 19. Tībi dōmum īre līcuit.¹⁴

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home.
2. Are you going home?
3. You ought to go home.
4. We ought to have gone home.
5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva.
6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte.
7. You are not going to Rome are you?
8. Are you not going to Rome?
9. Who will go home with me?
10. He says that corn ought to be collected.
11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home.
12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?

² See **52**.

³ *illum, that one*; see LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.

⁵ See **69**.

⁶ Where is *qui* made and why?

⁷ See **53**.

⁸ See **129**.

⁹ See EXAMPLE 7.

¹⁰ In this sentence *illum* is the subject of *vēnire*; *illum* — *vēnire*, the subject of *ōportēre*; *illum* — *ōportēre*, the object of *dicit*.

¹¹ See LN. LXVIII., Ex. 1.

¹² How does this *sībi* differ from the *sībi* in sentence 15?

¹³ What is the subject of *līcet*?

¹⁴ See EXAMPLE 3.

**LESSON LXX.****THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.—DATIVE OF AGENT.**

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. **109, a; 129:** A. & S. **229** (1), (2); B. **94, a, b;** B. & M. **328; 329:** G. **149; 150; 239; 243:** H. **233; 234:** C. **82.**

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. **232:** A. & S. **383:** B. **248,** RULE XXXVI.: B. & M. **847:** G. **353:** H. **388:** C. **157.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Doctūrus sūm,** *I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*
2. **Doctūrus ērat (fuit),** *he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*
3. **Audiendi sūmus,** *we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*
4. **Tībi (181) audiendi sūmus,** *you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*
5. **Agri consūli vastandi ērant (fuērunt),** *the consul had to lay waste the fields.*
6. **Vexillum prōpōnendum ērat,** *the flag had to be displayed.*
7. **Oppidum oppugnandum ērit,** *the town will have to be stormed.*
8. **Oppidum vōbis mūniendum ērit,** *you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate¹ and parse.

1. Obs̄des tībi dātūrus sum.² 2. Caesar m̄hi obs̄des dātūrus fuit. 3. Arioistus Rōmānos victūrus fuit. 4. Hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūri sunt. 5. Nunciat hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūros essē. 6. Frūmentum³ Aeduos³ flāgītātūrus lēgātus ērat. 7. Dōmum ītūri sūmus. 8. Patriae⁴ prōfūtūri estis. 9. Nōbis⁵ bellum gērendum ērit. 10. Duo consūles creandi sunt. 11. In hostes vēnientes tēla nōbis conjīcienda ērant. 12. Op̄idum lēgāto expugnandum ērit. 13. Pēr Alpes mīlītibus īter faciendum ērit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduis dandum est.⁶ 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesāri ī Galliam mātūrandum est.⁷ 17. Caesar mātūrandum sībi essē existīmāvit. 18. Dē ējus adventu Caesar certior⁸ fāciendus est. 19. Caesāri omnia ūno tempōre ērant āgenda: vexillum prōpōnendum,⁹ quod¹⁰ ērat insigne, quūm ād arma concurri¹³ ōportēret¹¹; signum tūba dandum⁹; āb ōpēre rēvōcandi¹² mīlītes; qui¹⁶ paulo longius¹⁴ aggēris pētendi causā¹⁵ prōcessērant arcessēndi¹²; ācies instruenda,⁹ mīlītes cōhortandi.¹²

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Imitate the Examples in translation.

² Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.

³ See **71**.

⁴ See **67**.

⁵ See **131** and Example 8 ; what is the literal translation ?

⁶ What are the different translations of this sentence ? See **39** and **131**.

⁷ **mātūrandum est** has no *personal* subject ; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.

⁸ See LN. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1.

⁹ Supply **ērat**.

¹⁰ Why is **quod** in the Neuter Singular ?

¹¹ See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7 ; what is the subject of **ōportēret** ? Translate by the Indicative.

¹² Supply **ērant**.

¹³ **concurri**, *to rush*.

¹⁴ **paulo longius**, *a little too far*.

¹⁵ **aggēris** — *causā, for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound*.

¹⁶ The antecedent of **qui** is **ii**, which is the subject of **arcessendi** (**ērant**).

**LESSON LXXI.****USE OF THE DATIVE.**

132. Datire with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. **226**; **227**: A. & S. **374** (1); **376**: B. **241**, RULE XXIX. ; **244**, RULE XXXII.: B. & M. **824**; **831**: G. **345**: H. **385**, I., II., and NOTE 3 : C. **153**; **155**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Civitati** (132) **persuāsit** **ūt exīrent**,¹ *he persuaded THE STATE to go forth.*
2. **Novis rēbus studēbat**, *he was eager FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., for new things.*
3. **Allobrōgībus impērāvit**, *he gave orders TO THE ALLOBROGES.*
4. **Plācuit ei** (132) **ut mittēret**,¹ *it pleased HIM to send.*
5. **Sī Allobrōgībus satisfaciat**, *if he should give satisfaction to THE ALLOBROGES.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hoc² fācilius eis persuāsit, quōd³ undīquē lōci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii contīnentur. 2. Is, Marco Messāla ēt Marco Pisōne consūlībus,⁵ regni cūpīdītāte inductus⁶ conjūrātiōnem nōbīlītatis fēcit ēt cīvītāti²⁰ persuāsit, ūt dē fīnībus suis cūm omnībus cōpiis exīrent.¹ 3. Persuādent Raurācis ēt Tulingis, fīnītīmis,⁷ ūti, eōdem ūsi⁸ consīlio,⁹ oppīdis⁵ suis vīcisquē exustis,¹⁰ ūnā cūm iis prōfīcīscantur.¹ 4. Orgētōrix cūpīdītāte regni adductus⁶ nōvis rēbus¹¹ stūdēbat. 5. Liscus dixit Dumnorīgem fāvēre Helvētiis sēd ōdisse¹² Caesārem ēt Rōmānos. 6. Caesar Allobrōgībus impērāvit ūt iis frūmenti cōpiam fācērent.¹ 7. Quamobrem plācuit¹³ ei ūt ād Ariovistum lēgātos mittēret. 8. Huic lēgiōni Caesar indulsērat praecīpuē. 9. Sī¹⁴ Aeduis dē¹⁵ injūriis, quas ipsis¹⁶ sociisquē eōrum¹⁷ intūlērint,¹⁸ ūtēm sī Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, cūm iis pācem fāciat.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go¹ forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,² because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt⁸ the same plan, burn up¹⁰ their houses and set out¹ in company with us.

5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for¹⁵ the wrongs which he has brought upon them¹⁶ and their¹⁷ allies. 7. We can¹⁹ not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

² See 79.

³ quōd is a *conjunction*; what kind of a clause does it introduce?

⁴ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4 and 79.

⁵ See 122.

⁶ See LN. LXIII., EXAMPLES.

⁷ See 25.

⁸ ūsi from ūtor, *to adopt*; lit., *having adopted, made use of*.

⁹ See 104.

¹⁰ oppīdis — exustis, *to burn up their towns, etc.*; lit., *their towns, etc. having been burned up.* (122)

¹¹ See Ex. 2.

¹² What kind of a verb is ūdisse? (127)

¹³ plācuit is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?

¹⁴ Sc. sātisfāciant.

¹⁵ de, *for*.

¹⁶ See 67.

¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

¹⁸ intūlērint from infēro; render it by the Perfect Indicative.

¹⁹ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 1.

²⁰ civītāti, *state*, is used here for civībus, *citizens*; hence the dependent clause has exirent instead of exiret.



LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 247: A. & S. 416: B. 261, RULE XLVI., c: B. & M. 895: G. 399: H. 417: C. 174.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 266; 267: A. & S. 472; 473, a: B. 309, RULE LXVIII.: B. & M. 1193; 1197: G. 247; 249; 253; 256: H. 483; 484, I., II., IV.: C. 203, 1 and note.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nōn amplius mīlībus (133) passuum octōdēcīm ābērat,**
he was not more than eighteen miles distant.
2. **Nihil virtūte (133) mēlius est, nothing is better than virtue.**
3. **Cīves mei sint (134) beāti, may my fellow-citizens be happy.**
4. **Amēmus (134) pātriam, let us love our country.**
5. **Vēniat (134), let him come.**
6. **Nē hōdie prōfīciscāmur (134), let us not set out to-day.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte mēlius est? 2. Scīmus sōlem mājōrem essē terrā. 3. Amīcītia, quā¹ nīhil mēlius hābēmus, nōbis² ā dis³ immortālībus dāta est. 4. Haec⁴ sunt dulciōra melle. 5. Mīlītes fortīores sunt impērātōre. 6. Caesar ab oppīdo nōn amplius mīlībus passuum duōbus castra pōsuit. 7. Ab urbe nōn amplius mīlībus passuum quinquē castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse āb hostium castris nōn longius mille⁵ ēt quingentis passībus ābērat. 9. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo ēt cōpiōsissīmo, nōn amplius mīlībus passuum octōdēcīm ābērat, rēi frūmentāriae prospīciendum⁶ existīmāvit:⁷ īter⁸ āb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. 10. Mīlītes vēniant. 11. Sītis⁹ beāti. 12. Hos latrōnes interfīciāmus. 13. Cae-sārem dē ējus adventu certīorem fāciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte dē quarta vīgīlia nē prōfīciscāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fīat dē meo consīlio. 16. Iter cēlērius pēr Galliam fāciāmus. 17. Cīvītāti¹⁰ persūādeāmus ūt exeant.¹¹ 18. Nōvis rēbus nē stūdeāmus. 19. Hostībus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduis dē injūriis, quas eōrum sōciis¹² intūlīmus, sātisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the general. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city.

5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch.
 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these
 men. 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May
 it please¹³ you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the
 enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See **133.**

² See **39.**

³ See **20.**

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

⁵ Is **mille** in this sentence an adjective or substantive? See **108.**

⁶ Sc. **essē.** See **130.**

⁷ **rēi — existimāvit**, *he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.*

⁸ Introduce the translation of this clause with *accordingly.*

⁹ See EXAMPLE 3.

¹⁰ See **132.**

¹¹ See LN. LXXI., NOTE 20.

¹² See **67.**

¹³ See LN. LXXI., Example 4.



LESSON LXXIII.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. **283—286**: A. & S. **524—526**: B. **61**; **311**, RULE LXX.: B. & M. **1163**; **1164**: G. **216**; **510**: H. **198**; **490—493**: C. **234**.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. **317**, REMARK: A. & S. **482**: B. **295**, RULE LVIII.; **299**, RULE LXI.: B. & M. **1205**; **1207**: G. **543—546**; **632**: H. **497**, I., II.: C. **206**. This answers such questions as *For what purpose?* *With what design?* *With what aim?* *To what end?* *Why?* *What?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnit	út vīdeat,	<i>he comes</i>	} TO SEE, IN ORDER TO SEE, THAT HE MAY SEE.
2. Vēniet		<i>he will come</i>	
3. Vēnit		<i>he has come</i>	
4. Vēnērit		<i>he will have come</i>	

5. **Věniēbat** } *he was coming* } TO SEE, IN ORDER
 6. **Vēnit** } **út vídēret,** *he came* } TO SEE, THAT HE
 7. **Vēnērat** } *he had come* } MIGHT SEE.
 8. **Ut consēqui posset pontem fēcit,** *he made a bridge* THAT HE
 MIGHT BE ABLE *to pursue.*
 9. **Postūlāvit nē Aeduis bellum inferret,** *he demanded* THAT HE
 SHOULD NOT MAKE war UPON *the Aedui.*
 10. **Equītātum qui sustinēret impētum mīsit,** *he sent cavalry* TO
 WITHSTAND *the attack.*
 11. **Nē offendēret vērēbātur,** *he was fearing* THAT *he should offend.*
 12. **Ut sōciī vēnīrent vērēbātur,** *he was fearing* THAT *the allies*
 would NOT come.

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrōgībus impērāvit, **út iis frūmenti cōpiam fācērent.**
2. Caesar Dumnōrīgem mōnet, **út īn rēlīquum tempus¹ sus-**
pīcīōnes vītet. 3. Nām, nē ējus supplīcio² Divitiāci ānīmum
 offendēret, vērēbātur. 4. Dumnōrīgi persuāsit **út idēm³ cō-**
nārētūr. 5. Cōpias suas Caesar ī proxīmūm collem subdūcit
 ēquītātumquē, qui sustinēret hostium impētum, mīsit. 6. Lē-
 gātos ād eum mittunt qui dīcant agros consūli⁴ vastandos essē.⁵
 7. Postūlāvit nē aut Aeduis⁶ aut eōrum sōciis⁶ bellum infer-
 ret. 8. Nonnulli pūdōre adducti,⁷ **út tīmōris suspīcīōnem**
 vītārent, rēmānēbant. 9. Caesar omnīum ex conspectu rē-
 mōtis ēquis,⁸ **út spēm fūgāe tollēret, cōhortātūs⁹ suos¹⁰ proe-**
 līum commīsit. 10. Caesar ād Ariovistūm lēgātos mīsit, qui
 āb eo postūlārent, **úti ālīquēm¹¹ lōcum mēdium utrīusque¹²**
 collōquio¹³ dīcēret. 11. Castella cōmūnīt, quo¹⁴ fācilius, sī
 sē invīto¹⁵ transīre cōnārentur, prōhībēre possit.

Write in Latin.¹⁶

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn.
2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers.
3. We shall advise

him¹⁷ to avoid suspicions in the future.¹ 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse⁸ out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that¹⁴ we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

¹ in *rēliquum tempus*, *in the future*; lit., *into the remaining time*.

² See **79**.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13; where would **idem** be made?

⁴ See **131**.

⁵ See **130** and **62**.

⁶ See **67**.

⁷ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 3.

⁸ See **122** and EXAMPLES.

⁹ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 2.

¹⁰ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.

¹¹ How declined? See **116, a.**

¹² *mēdium utriusque*, *midway between both*; *uterque* is declined like *uter*. (**24**)

¹³ See **39**.

¹⁴ *quo* is preferred to *ut* when its clause contains a comparative.

¹⁵ *se invito*, *against his will*; see **122**; lit., *he unwilling*.

¹⁶ In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.

¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.



LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 231: A. & S. 384: B. 243, RULE XXXI.: B. & M. 821: G. 349: H. 387: C. 156.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 233, *a*: A. & S. 385; 386: B. 246, RULE XXXIV.: B. & M. 848: G. 350: H. 390, I., II.: C. 161.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Est mīhi (137) dōmi pāter,** *I have a father at home;* lit., *a father is to me at home.*
2. **Sex vīro (137) filii fuērunt,** *A man had six sons.*
3. **Haec mīhi (138) sunt cūrae,** *these (things) are A CARE TO ME ;*
lit., *these (things) are FOR A CARE TO ME.*
4. **Tertiam āciem nostris subsidio mīsit,** *he sent the third line AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).*
5. **Nōvissimis praesidio ērant,** *they were A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mīhi est āmīcus ; tībi sunt plūrīmi āmīci. 2. Magni pēdes sunt meo fratri sēd cāput parvum. 3. Erit consūli magnus exercītus. 4. Impērātōri fuērunt mīlītes multi ēt¹ fortes. 5. Virtus est vīro hōnōri. 6. Dixit haec sībi essē cūrae. 7. Quinquē cōhortes castris praesidio rēlīquit. 8. Lēgāto² impērāvit ūt quinquē cōhortes castris praesidio rēlinquēret.³ 9. Magno ūsui nostris fuit. 10. Nām ēquītātui,⁴ quem⁵ auxīlio Caesāri Aedui mīsērant, Dumnōrix praeērat. 11. Gallis magno ād pugnam⁶ ērat⁷ impēdīmento, quōd nōn sātīs commōdē pugnāre pōtērant. 12. Boii ēt Tulingi, qui hōmīnum mīlībus⁸ circītēr quindēcīm agmen hostium claudēbant ēt nōvissimis⁹ praesidio ērant, ex ūtēnēre¹⁰ nostros circumvēnēre.¹¹ 13. His rēbus¹² cognītis Caesar Gallōrum anīmos verbis¹³ confirmāvit pollīcītusquē est sībi eam rem cūrae fūtūram.¹⁴ 14. Ariovistus dixit āmīcītiām pōpūli Rōmāni sībi ornāmento ēt praesidio nōn dētrīmento essē¹⁵ oportēre.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in

battle that we could¹⁷ not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieutenant² to send¹⁸ soldiers as a relief to our men. 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought¹⁶ to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

² See 132.

³ Why is the Subjunctive used ? (136) Why the Imperfect Tense ? (135)
What question does *ut — rēlinquēret* answer ? (136)

⁴ See 67.

⁵ *quem* ; why is the Masculine Singular used ? Why the Accusative ?

⁶ *ād pugnam, in battle.*

⁷ The subject of *ērat* is the substantive clause *quōd — pōtērant.*

⁸ Is *mīlibus* used as a noun or as an adjective ? (108); see also 54.

⁹ *nōvissimis, to the hindmost* ; lit., *to the newest.*

¹⁰ *ex itinēre, on the march.*

¹¹ What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural ?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See 54.

¹⁴ Sc. *essē.*

¹⁵ See 129.

¹⁶ See 128 and Ex. 8.

¹⁷ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 2.

¹⁸ See 136.



LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. 319, d; 332, a : A. & S. 483; 494, a; 499 : B. 296, RULE LIX. ; 297, RULE LX.; 301, RULE LXII.: B. & M. 1218-1220 : G. 553-558: 551, 1, 2 : H. 500, I., II. ; 501, I., 1 ; 504 : C. 207; 208; 209; 223.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Tantus tīmor exercītum occūpāvit ūt omnium mentes perturbāret, such fear seized the army THAT IT DISTURBED the minds of all.*

2. **Dixit nōn sē tām barbārum essē ūt nōn scīret,** *he said he was not so uncivilized AS not TO KNOW.*
3. **Fīēbat ūt mīnus lātē vāgārentur,** *it happened THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT less extensively.*
4. **Rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quīn tēla conjīcērent,** *they could not be prevented FROM HURLING weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mil̄tes nūmēro¹ tām multi ērant, ūt agm̄ni² nōviss̄mo magno praeſidio² essent.³ 2. His rēbus⁴ fīēbat⁵ ūt ēt mīnus lātē vāgārentur ēt mīnus fācile fīnītīmis bellum inferre possent. 3. Arioſtus dixit nōn sē tām barbārum essē, ūt nōn scīret bello⁶ Allobrōgum proxīmo Aeduos Rōmānis auxīlīum nōn tūlisſe. 4. Tantus sūbīto tīmor omnem exercītūm occūpāvit, ūt nōn mēdiocrītēr omnīum mentes⁷ anīmosquē perturbāret. 5. Mons autēm altiss̄mus impendēbat, ūt⁸ fācile perpauci prōhībēre possent. 6. Divīco respondit: Itā⁹ Helvētios ā mājōrībus suis instītūtos essē,¹⁰ ūti obs̄des accīpēre, nōn dāre, consuērint.¹¹ 7. Ita dies¹² circītēr quindēcīm ūter fēcērunt, ūti intēr nōviss̄mūm hostiū agmen ēt nostrū p̄īmūm¹³ sex mīlia passuum interessent. 8. Ipse autēm Arioſtus tantos sībi¹⁴ spīrītus, tantam arrōgāntiam sumpsērat, ūt fērendus¹⁵ nōn vīdērētur. 9. Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quīn ī nostros tēla conjīcērent.

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number¹ that we can easily keep their¹⁷ army from the march.¹⁶ 4. For these reasons⁴ it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.¹⁶ 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.¹³ 7. This man assumes¹⁹ such lofty airs

that he does not seem endurable.¹⁵ 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.¹⁵
 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making¹⁸ war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See **124.**² See **138.**³ Why the *Imperfect?* (**135**)⁴ *his rēbus, for these reasons;* see **79.**⁵ What is the subject of *fiēbat?* ⁶ See **111.**⁷ How do *mens* and *ānimus* differ in signification? See GEN. VY.⁸ *ūt, so that.* ⁹ *ita* modifies *institūtos essē.*¹⁰ *institūtos essē* is object of *rēspondit.* (**52**)¹¹ See A. & G. **128**, *a*: A. & S. **228**, *a, b*: B. **95**, *d*: B. & M. **315**: G. **151**, *1*: H. **235**: C. **84**; *7*.¹² See **93.**¹³ *primum*, sc. *agmen*; render *van.*¹⁴ See **39.**¹⁵ *fērendus, endurable*; lit. (*one*) to be endured.¹⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6. ¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.¹⁸ See EXAMPLE 4. ¹⁹ *to assume, sibi sūmēre.*

LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. **218**: A. & S. **359**: B. **234**, RULE XXIII.: B. & M. **765**: G. **373**: H. **399**: C. **136**, 2.

141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. **214**, *c*: A. & S. **357**: B. **230**, REM. 1: B. & M. **780**: G. **365**: H. **401**: C. **135**.

142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. **219**: A. & S. **365**: B. **235**, RULE XXIV.: B. & M. **788**: G. **375**: H. **406**, II.: C. **137**, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Qui rēi* (**140**) *mīlitāris pērītissimus hăbēbātur*, *who was considered very skilful in military SCIENCE.*

2. **Bellandi** (**140**) **cūpīdi**, *desirous OF CARRYING ON WAR.*
3. **Jūdīcium impērātōris** (**141**) **est**, *the decision is THE GENERAL'S ; or, belongs TO THE GENERAL.*
4. **Gallia est pōpūli** (**141**) **Rōmāni**, *Gaul belongs TO THE Roman PEOPLE.*
5. **Rēmīniscātur pristīnae virtūtis** (**142**) **Helvētiōrum**, *let him recollect THE former VALOR of the Helvetii.*
6. **Vētēris contūmēliae** (**142**) **oblīvisci vult**, *he is willing to forget THE old INSULT.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus belli pērītus¹ hābētur. 2. Lēgātus nītītūr ūt belli pērītus fīat.² 3. Nītēbātūr ūt rēi mīlītāris pērītissīmus fīeret.³ 4. Publius Considius, qui rēi mīlītāris pērītissīmus hābēbātūr ēt⁵ ī exercītu Luci Sullae ēt posteā ī Marci Crassi⁴ fuērat, cūm explōrātōrībus praemittītūr. 5. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tām impērītūm esse rērum, ūt nōn scīret⁶ Aeduos auxīlio⁷ pōpūli Rōmāni nōn ūsos essē.⁸ 6. Mīlītes hortābor, ūt glōriae sempēr memōres sint. 7. Nos mōnūtū ūt virtūtis sempēr mēmōres essēmus. 8. Qua dē causa⁹ hōmīnes bellandi¹⁰ cūpīdi magno dōlōre affīcīebantūr. 9. Dīcit ipsum esse Dumnōrīgem cūpīdum nōvārum rērum. 10. Dīcunt dē summa belli¹¹ jūdīcium impērātōris essē¹² sē existīmāvisse.¹³ 11. Nēquē jūdīcat Galliam pōtius essē Ariovisti quām pōpūli Rōmāni. 12. Mīlītūm est fortītēr pugnāre ;¹³ impērātōris est impērāre. 13. Divīco Caesārem hortātūr ūt rēmīniscātūr ēt¹⁴ vētēris incommōdi pōpūli Rōmāni et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 14. Caesar rēcentīum injūriārum oblīvisci nōn vult.¹⁵ 15. Omnis contūmēliae oblīviscāmūr.

Write in Latin.

1. I am not considered very skilful in war.¹⁶ 2. I shall strive to become² skilful in war. 3. This lieutenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was

considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers.
 4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.¹⁶
 5. The decision concerning the general management¹¹ of affairs
 belongs¹⁷ to the consul. 6. This house is Caesar's. 7. We
 ought to forget insults.¹⁸ 8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See **64**.² See **126** and **136**.³ Why Imperfect? (**135**)⁴ *in Marci Crassi*, sc. *exercitu*; translate, *in that of Marcus Crassus*.⁵ *et* connects *hābēbātur* and *fuērat*. ⁶ See **139** and Example 2.⁷ See **104**.⁸ *ūsos essē* depends upon *sciret*⁹ *qua dē causa*, *for this reason*.¹⁰ *bellandi* is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.¹¹ *dē summa belli*, *concerning the general management of the war*.¹² *essē* depends upon *existimāvisse*; *existimāvisse* upon *dicunt*.¹³ See **129**.¹⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.¹⁵ See **125**.¹⁶ See **140**.¹⁷ See Ex. 3.¹⁸ See **142**.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. **304–308**: A. & S. **476**, *a, b*: B. **305**, *a*, 1–3;
306, RULE LXVI.: B. & M. **1259–1268**: G. **590**; **591**; **596–599**: H. **506**; **507**, I.–III.: C. **215**, 1, 2, 3, 4.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī vincit, laetātur**, *if he is conquering, he is rejoicing*.
2. **Sī vincet, laetābitur**, *if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice*.
3. **Sī vicērit, laetābitur**, *if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice*.

4. **Sī** **vincat**, laetētur, if he should conquer, he would rejoice.
5. **Sī** **vincēret**, laetārētur, if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.
6. **Sī** **vīcisset**, laetātus esset, if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.

Analyze and parse.

1. **Sī** pugnat, vincit. 2. **Sī** pugnābit, vincet. 3. **Sī** pugnāvērit, vincet. 4. **Sī** pugnet, vincat. 5. **Sī** pugnāret, vincēret. 6. **Sī** pugnāvisset, vīcisset. 7. **Sī** Helvētii Allobrōgībus¹ sātisfācient, cum iis pācem fāciam. 8. **Sī** Helvētii Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, cūm iis pācem fāciam. 9. Caesar dīcit sī Helvētii Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, sēsē cūm iis pācem esse factūrum.² 10. **Sī** quid³ vultis,¹⁰ rēvertīmīni.⁴ 11. **Sī** pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm Helvētiis faciet, īn eam partem ībunt¹¹ Helvētii ūbī eos esse vōluēris.⁵ 12. **Sīn** bello⁶ persēqui⁷ persēvērābis,⁸ rēmīniscēre⁴ ēt vētēris incommōdi⁹ pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 13. **Sī** vētēris contūmēliae oblīvisci vellem,¹⁰ nūm¹² ētiām rēcentium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnēre⁷ possem? 14. **Sī** id fīet, prōvinciae¹³ pērīcūlōsum ērit. 15. Caesar dīcit sī nēmo¹⁴ sēquātur, sē cūm sōla dēcīma lēgiōne ītūrum essē.¹¹

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,¹ he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,³ ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish⁵ us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing⁸ us with war,⁶ let them recall to mind¹⁵ our former valor.⁹ 9. If we were willing to forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132.² essē factūrum = factūrum essē.³ See 116 and Ex. 6.⁴ See 47.⁵ What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (42)⁶ See 54.⁷ See 69.⁸ persēqui persēvēro, *I persist in pursuing.*⁹ See 142.¹⁰ See 125.¹¹ See 126.¹² What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.¹³ See 86.¹⁴ The Genitive and Ablative of nēmo are rare: these cases are supplied by nullius and nullo (from nullus, 24).¹⁵ See 134.

LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference.

A. & G. 250: A. & S. 415: B. 262, RULE XLVII.: B. & M. 929: G. 400: H. 423: C. 176.

144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. 251: A. & S. 411: B. 263, RULE XLVIII.: B. & M. 888: G. 402: H. 419, II.: C. 175. This is called sometimes *the Ablative of Characteristic*, sometimes *the Descriptive Ablative*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Altērum īter multo (144) expēditius ērat, *the other route was MUCH more passable.*
2. Mātūrius paulo (144) dōmum contendit, *he hastens home A LITTLE sooner.*
3. Ipsum Dumnōrīgem, summā audāciā (144, a), *Dumnorix himself, (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.*
4. Summa hūmānitātē (144, a) ādōlescens, *a youth OF THE HIGHEST CULTURE.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multo grāvius quēritūr.¹ 2. Multo mājor ālacri-
tas exercītui² injecta est. 3. Altērum ūter pēr prōvinciam
nostram ērat, multo fācilius atquē expēditius, propt̄reā quōd
int̄er fīnes Helvētiōrum ēt Allobrōgum, qui nūpēr pācāti ērant,
Rhōdānus fluit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestāte³ duōbus max̄mis
bellis⁴ confectis mātūrius paulo, quām tempus anni postūlābat,
in hīberna ūn⁵ Sēquānos exercītum dēduxit. 5. Post ējus
mortem nīhilo mīnus Helvētii id, quōd constītuērant,⁶ fācere
cōnantur, ūt ē finībus suis exeant.⁷ 6. Rēlīquum spātium
mons cont̄inet magnā altītūdīne, itā, ūt rādīces⁸ montis ex
utrāque parte⁹ rīpae¹⁰ flūmīnis contingant.¹¹ 7. Galli ingenti
magnītūdīne corpōrum Germānos,¹² incrēdībili virtūte atquē
exercītatiōne ūn armis essē¹³ praedīcābant. 8. Commōdissī-
mum vīsum est¹⁴ Cāium Vālērium Procillum, summā virtūte
ēt hūmānītāte ādōlescentem, ād eum mittēre. 9. Rēpērit
ipsum esse Dumnōrīgem, summā audāciā, magnā āpūd plēbem
propt̄r libērālītātem grātiā, cūpīdūm¹⁵ rērum¹⁶ nōvārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely.
2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers.
3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani.
4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among⁵ the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded.
5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do).
6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor.
7. We have seen mountains of great height.
8. It seemed¹⁴ most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

Notes.

- 1 See **103.** 2 See **67.**
 3 See **111.** 4 See **122.**
 5 *in, among.* 6 *constituērant, sc. fācēre.*
 7 *ūt — exeant* is an appositive to *id*; for the mood, see **139**; translate,
to go forth. 8 See **34.** 9 *ex utrāque parte, on each side.*
 10 See **32.** 11 See **139.**
 12 See **53.** 13 See **52.**
 14 What is the subject of **visum est?** (**129**)
 15 See **64.** 16 See **140.**

**LESSON LXXIX.**

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. **313, a-e:** A. & S. **478-480; 510 (2):** B. **292,** e, RULE LVI.; **303, d,** RULE LXIV.: B. & M. **1281-1284:** G. **605-609:** H. **514; 515, I.-III.:** C. **204, 1, 2; 214, 3; 225.**

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quūm pugnātum sit, although they fought;* lit., *it was fought.*
2. *Līcēt victōriā glōriētur, although he glories in victory.*
3. *Quamvīs cārēret nōmīne, although he was without the name.*
4. *Etsī vīdēbat, tāmēn nōn pūtābat, although he saw, yet he did not think.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Quūm fortītēr pugnēnt, tāmēn nōn vincent.* 2. *Quūm Sēquāni Rōmānis¹ sātisfēcērint, tāmēn lēgātus pācem cūm iis nōn fācit.* 3. *Quūm ea² ītā sint, tāmēn, sī obsīdes āb iis sībi dentur,³ cūm iis pācem fāciat.³* 4. *Nām hoc tōto proelio,⁴ quūm āb hōra septīma ād vespērum pugnātum sit,⁵ āversum hostem vīdēre nēmo pōtuit.* 5. *Līcēt⁶ me hortētur, nōn pugnābo.* 6. *Līcēt mīles vulnērātus sit, tāmēn laetātur.* 7. *Lī-*

cet Helvētii sua victōria⁷ glōrientur, tāmēn ūter fācient nōn pēr nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignitātē⁸ rēgia, quamvis cārēret nōmīne.⁹ 9. Quamvis sint sūb āqua, sūb āqua mālēdīcēre tentant. 10. Caesar, etsī prōpē exacta jām aestas ērat, tāmēn eō¹⁰ exercītum adduxit. 11. Nām etsī sīnē ullō pērīculo lēgiōnis¹¹ dēlectae cūm ēquītātu proelium fōre¹² vīdēbat, tāmēn committendum¹³ nōn pūtābat. 12. Itā dies circītēr quindēcīm ūter fēcērunt, ūtī intēr nōvissīmum hostium agmen ēt nostrum prīmūm nōn amplius quīnis¹⁴ aut sēnis mīlībus¹⁵ passuum intēresset.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer.
2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them.
3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset.
4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.⁸
5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the summer was almost gone.
6. He thinks that he ought to begin¹³ battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132.

² See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

³ See LN. LXXVII., Ex. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (143)

⁴ See 111.

⁵ See Ex. 1.

⁶ līcēt is properly an Impersonal Verb (128), Present Tense, with ūt (*that*) omitted; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive. (135) What is the literal translation?

⁷ See 79.

⁸ See 144, a.

⁹ See Ex. 3.

¹⁰ eō, *thither*.

¹¹ A. & G. 217: A. & S. 353 (2): B. 233, RULE XXII.: B. & M. 746: G. 361, 2: H. 396, III.: C. 133, 3.

¹² fōre = fūtūrum essē. (62)

¹³ committendum, sc. essē; see 130.

¹⁴ quinīs, etc., *than five, etc. each day*.

¹⁵ See 133.

¹⁶ See 139.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. 252 : A. & S. 408 : B. 258, RULE XLIII., c: B. & M. 884 : G. 404 : H. 422 : C. 179. This answers such questions as *For how much?* *At what price?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 257, b: A. & S. 423, b: B. 262, RULE XLVII.: B. & M. 958: G. 335, REMARK 1: H. 379, 2: C. 176. This answers the question *How far?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 245, a: A. & S. 418: B. 261, RULE XLVI., a: B. & M. 919: G. 373, REMARKS 1-4: H. 421, III.: C. 179, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. Dōmum duōbus tālentis (146) ēmit, *he bought a house FOR TWO TALENTS.*
2. Oppidum parvo prētio (146) vendīdit, *he sold the town AT A SMALL PRICE.*
3. Milibus (147) passuum quattuor ēt vīgintī absunt, *they are TWENTY-FOUR MILES distant.*
4. Dignus est mājōrībus (148), *he is worthy OF (his) ANCESTORS.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic¹ mercēde pueros ēt puellas dōcet. 2. Vīgintī tālentis ūnam ūratiōnem Isocrātes vendīdit. 3. Vendīdit hic auro patriam. 4. Victōria nōbis² multo sanguīne stētit.³ 5. Vēreor nē victōria iis multo sanguīne stet.⁴ 6. Quām Rōmāni vīcērint,⁵ tāmēn victōria iis multo sanguīne stētit. 7. Sept̄mo die āb explōrātōribus certior factus⁶ est Ariovisti cōpias⁷ ā nostris⁸ milibus passuum quattuor ēt vīgintī ābesse.⁹ 8. Hic lōcus aequo fērē spātio āb castris Ariovisti ēt Caesāris ābērat. 9. Lēgiōnem Caesar, quām ēquis¹⁰ dēvexērat, passibus dūcentis āb eo tūmūlo constituit. 10. Itēm ēquites

Ariovisti pāri intervallo constitērunt.¹¹ 11. Eōdem die castra prōmōvit ēt mīlībus passuum sex ā Caesāris castris sūb monte consēdit. 12. Hī pueri patrībus indigni sunt. 13. Hic im-pērātor immortālitāte dignus est. 14. Līcēt¹² hī mīlītes fortissīmi sint, tāmēn mājōrībus indigni sunt. 15. Puērum hortēmur ūt mājōrībus dignus sit.¹³ 16. Nulla vox est āb iis audīta pōpūli Rōmāni mājestāte ēt sūpēriōrībus victōriis indigna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man¹ will teach for wages.
2. I shall sell my house at a small price.
3. He is by no means rich, although he sells⁵ houses at a large price.
4. I fear that I shall not sell⁴ my house at a large price.
5. We are about fifteen miles from the city.
6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill.
7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place.
8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva.
9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother.
10. Let us urge the soldiers to be¹³ worthy of their country.

Notes.

¹ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

² See 39.

³ See GEN. VY. under **stō**.

⁴ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁵ See 145.

⁶ See LN. LXVIII., Ex. 2.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ Sc. cōpiis.

⁹ ābessē depends upon the idea of saying contained in ab — factus est, *he was informed by scouts that*, etc., i. e. who said that, etc.

¹⁰ ēquis, *on horseback*; see 54.

¹¹ See consistō, GEN. VY.

¹² See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.

¹³ See 136.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 321, *a, b, c*; 326: A. & S. 500 (2) *b*; 510 (2); 519: B. 302, RULE LXIII.: B. & M. 1250; 1251; 1255: G. 538-541; 587; 636: H. 516, I., II.; 517: C. 214, 3; 224; 232.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quum impetus sustinere non possent, altéri sē ī montem rēcēpērunt,** since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.
2. **Caesar injūriam fāciēbat qui vectigālia dētēriōra fācēret,** Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.
3. **Aedui questi sunt quod Harūdes fines eōrum pōpūlārentur,** the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.
4. **Quod ā Bibracte ābērat, rei frūmentāiae prospiciendum existimāvit,** because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfācile est, quum virtute¹ omnibus praestētis, tōtīus Galliae impērio² pōtīri.³
2. Orgētōrix dixit perfācile essē, quum virtute omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae impērio potīri.
3. Quum magna ex parte⁴ eōrum prēcībus⁵ adductus bellum suscēpērit, quēritur.
4. Caesāri quum id nunciātum esset, mātūrat āb urbe prōfīcisci.
5. Diūtius⁶ quum nostrōrum⁷ impētus sustinēre non possent, altéri sē, ut coepērant,⁸ ī montem rēcēpērunt, altéri ād impēdīmenta ēt carros suos sē contūlērunt.
6. In fīnes Lingōnum die quarto pervēnērunt quum propter vulnēra mīlitum nostri trīdūm mōrāti eos sēqui non pōtuissent.
7. Ariovistus dixit magnam Caesārem

injūriam fācēre qui suo adventu vectīgālia dētēriōra⁹ fācēret.
 8. Grāvitēr eos accūsat quōd āb iis nōn sublēvētur. 9. Multyo¹⁰ ētiām grāvius quōd sit destītūtus quērītur. 10. Proptēr frīgōra, quōd Gallia sūb septemtriōnibus pōsita est,¹¹ frūmenta īn agris mātūra nōn ērant. 11. Eo autēm frūmento,² quōd¹² flūmīne Arāre nāvībus¹³ subvexērat, proptērēā mīnus ūti¹⁴ pōtērat, quōd īter āb Arāre Helvētii āvertērant, ā quībus discēdēre nōlēbat.¹⁵ 12. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo ēt copiōsissīmo, nōn amplius mīlībus¹⁶ passuum octōdēcim ābērat, rei frūmentāiae prospīciendum¹⁷ existīmat: īter āb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte¹⁸ īre contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government.
2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls¹⁹ they will easily conquer.
3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks.
4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage.
5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn.
6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price.²⁰
7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great.
8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,²¹ because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See **124.**

² See **104.**

³ See **129.**

⁴ magna ex parte, *in great part.*

⁵ See **79.**

⁶ Diūtius modifies sustīnēre.

⁷ The *Possessive Pronouns*, like the Demonstrative, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁸ What kind of a verb is coēpērant? (**127**)

⁹ See EXAMPLE 2.

¹⁰ See **144.**

¹¹ Of what does **quod** — **pōsita est** express the cause?

¹² See **115** and **34**.

¹⁴ See **69**.

¹⁶ See **133**.

¹⁸ See **105**.

²⁰ See **146**.

¹³ See **54**.

¹⁵ See **125**.

¹⁷ See EXAMPLE 4.

¹⁹ *Than the Gauls, quam Galli.*

²¹ See **111**.



LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. **323**; **325**; **327**; **328**: A. & S. **502**; **503**; **505**; **509**, *a*: B. **292**, *d*, 1–3, RULE LVI.; **304**, 1–3, RULE LXV.: B. & M. **1237**; **1238**; **1241**; **1244**: G. **570**; **571**; **574**; **576**; **579**; **580**; **581**: H. **519**, I., II., 1, 2; **520**, I., 1, 2, II.; **521**, I., II., 1, 2: C. **214**, 1, 2, 4, 5.

EXAMPLES.

- Quum lēgāti mittērentur, Arioūistus postūlāvit**, when ambassadors were sent, *Arioūistus demanded*.
- Priusquām quidquām cōnārētur Divitiācum vōcat**,¹ before he attempted anything he summoned *Divitiacus*.
- Dūm haec gēruntur Caesāri nunciātum est**, while these things were taking place it was reported to *Caesar*.
- Nōn exspectandū sibi stātuit dūm pērvēnīrent**, he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.

Analyze and parse.

- Diū **quum** esset pugnātum, impēdimentis castrisque² nostri³ pōtīti sunt. 2. **Quum** trīdui viam⁴ prōcessisset, nunciātum est⁵ ei Arioūistum cūm suis omnībus cōpiis contendēre. 3. Hic pāgus ūnus, **quum** dōmo⁶ exisset patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā,⁷ Lucium Cassium consūleū interfēcērat ēt ējus exercitum sūb jūgum mīsērat. 4. **Quum**²⁰ hostium ācies ā sīnistro cornu⁸ pulsā⁹ atquē ī fūgam conversa esset, ā dextro

cornu věhémentēr multūtūdīne suōrum³ nostram ūciem prēmēbant. 5. Itāquē priusquam quidquām cōnārētur Divitiācum ād sē vōcāri jūbet.¹ 6. Postquām īd ānīmum advertit cōpias suas Caesar ī proxīmum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquām Caesar pervēnit obs̄des, arīna, servos¹⁰ pōposcit. 8. Dūm haec ī collōquio gēruntur,¹¹ Caesāri nunciātum est⁵ ēquītes Ariovisti lāp̄ides tēlāquē¹² ī nostros conjīcēre. 9. Tāmēn, ūt spātiū intercēdēre posset, dūm mīlītes, quos¹³ impērāvērat, convēnīrent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ād dēlibērandū¹⁴ sumptūrum.¹⁵ 10. Quībus¹⁶ rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandū¹⁷ sībi stātuit, dūm, omnībus fortūnis¹⁸ sociōrum consumptis, ī Santōnos Helvētīi pervēnīrent.

Write in Latin.

- When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them.¹⁹
- When they had proceeded a three days' march,⁴ they pitched (their) camp.
- Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council.
- After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and¹⁰ horses.
- Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us.
- While the troops are assembling we are waiting.
- We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble.
- Influenced by these¹⁶ affairs, we decided that we ought¹⁷ not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 276, d: A. & S. 466: B. 58: B. & M. 1082: G. 220: H. 467, III.: C. 189, 6.

² See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

³ See LN. LXXXI., NOTE 7.

⁴ See 109.

⁵ What is the subject of **nunciātum est?** (129)

⁶ See 107.

⁷ See 111.

⁸ a sinistro cornu, on the left wing. ⁹ pulsa, sc. esset.

¹⁰ When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it : e. g. either *obsides, arma, servos* ; or *obsides et arma et servos* ; NOT *obsides, arma et servos*.

¹¹ A. & G. 276, *c* : A. & S. 468 : G. 220, REMARK : H. 467, 4 : C. 214, 1, note 2.

¹² An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : *tēlāque*.

¹³ Sc. *convenire*. ¹⁴ *ad delibērandum, for deliberating*.

¹⁵ *sumptūrum*, sc. *essē*.

¹⁶ The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative : *quae res*, THESE *affairs*.

¹⁷ *exspectandum*, sc. *essē*. See 130 and 131

¹⁸ See 122. ¹⁹ See 71 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

²⁰ See 145.



LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. 334, w. preceding
NOTE : A. & S. 518 : B. 294, *a*, RULE LVII. : B. & M. 1182 : G.
454; 469 : H. 528, 2 NOTE ; 529, I. : C. 231, 1 w. n. 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quid sui consili¹ sit ostendit*, *he shows what his plan is*.
2. *Causa quae esset quaesiit*, *he asked what the cause was*.
3. *Ariovisto mīrum vīsum est quid ī Gallia Caesāri nēgōti¹*
esset, *Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul*.

Analyze and parse.

1. *Quālis esset nātūra montis, qui² cognoscērent³ mīsit*.
2. *Dīcit intelligēre sēsē quanto īd cūm pērīcūlo fēcērit*.
3. *Ex quo jūdīcāri pōtest⁴ quantum hābeat ī sē bōni¹ constantia*.
4. *Dumnōrīgi custōdes pōnit⁵ ūt, quae āgat, quībus-*
cūm⁶ lōquātur, scīre possit.
5. *Ariovistus dixit sībi mīrum vīdēri⁷ quid ī sua Gallia, quām bello⁸ vīcis̄set⁹ aut Caesāri¹⁰*

aut omnino pōpūlo Rōmāno¹⁰ nēgōti¹ esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod pēr fīnes Aeduōrum ēt Sēquānōrum ī Rhōdānum influit incrēdibili lēnitāte, itā ut ocūlis, īn utram partem¹¹ fluat, jūdīcāri nōn possit. 7. Postero die castra ex eo lōco mōvent. Idēm¹² fācit Caesar, ēquītātumquē omnem, ād nūmērum quat- tuor mīlium, quem ex omni prōvīncia ēt Aeduīs atquē eōrum sōciis coactūm hābēbat,¹³ praemittit, qui vīdeant,³ quas īn partes hostes īter fāciant. 8. Caesar vēhēmentēr eos incūsāvit quod, aut quām īn partem aut quo consīlio¹⁴ dūcērentur,¹⁵ sībi quaerendū¹⁶ aut cōgītandum pūtārent.¹⁷ 9. Caesar dixit dē quarta vīgīlia sē castra mōtūrum, ut quām prīmū intellī- gēre posset, utrūm āpūd eos pūdor atquē offīcium, ān tīmor vālēret. 10. Quām ex captīvis quaerēret Caesar, quām ōb rem Ariovistus proelio⁸ nōn dēcertāret, hanc rēpēriēbat cau- sam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. We shall send (men) to ascertain³ in what direction the river flows.
3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows.
4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled.
5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think¹⁷ they ought to ask¹⁶ in what direction they are to be led.
6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly.
7. We shall place guards over him,⁵ that we may know with⁶ whom he speaks.
8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *quid sui consili*, *what his plan*; lit., *what of his plan*. See A. & G. **216**: A. & S. **354**: B. **227**, RULE XVII.: B. & M. **77** : G. **366**; **371**: H. **396**, IV. : C. **133**, 4.

² qui, sc. *vīros* as antecedent.

³ See 136 and Ex. 10.

⁴ What is the subject of *pōtest*?

⁵ *Dumnōrīgi* — *pōnit*, *he places guards over* (lit. for) *Dumnorix*.

⁶ See LN. LIX., NOTE 1.

⁷ *sībi* — *vīdēri*, *he wondered*; lit., *it seemed to him wonderful*; for *sībi*, see 39.

⁸ *bello*, *in war*; see 54.

⁹ *vicisset*, translate by the Indicative.

¹⁰ See 137.

¹¹ *in utram partem*, *in which direction*.

¹² How does *idem* differ in meaning from *idem*?

¹³ *coactum hābēbat*, *he had collected*. A. & G. 292, c: A. & S. 547 c: B. & M. 1358: G. 230: H. 388, 1, Note: C. 251, 3.

¹⁴ See 79.

¹⁵ *dūcērentur*, *they were to be led*.

¹⁶ *quaerendum*, sc. *essē*: see 130.

¹⁷ See 149 and Ex. 3.

LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. 335, Rem.; 336; 339: A. & S. 515; 516: B. 316; 317, RULE LXXIV.: B. & M. 1295; 1296: G. 651–653: H. 522; 523, I., II., 1, 2, III.; 524: C. 228; 229.

EXAMPLE.

Orātio Recta, Direct Discourse.

Ob eam
rem ex cīvītāte prōfūgi ēt
Rōmam vēni, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsidibus
tēnēbar.

I fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because **I** was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Orātio Oblīqua, Indirect Discourse.

Lōcūtus est Divitiācus: ōb eam
rem *sē* ex cīvītāte prōfūg*isse* ēt
Rōmam vēn*isse*, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsidibus
tēnērēt*ur*.

Divitiacus said: **he** fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because **he** was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Divīco respondit: Itā Helvētios ā mājōrībus suis instītūtos esse, ūtī obs̄ides acc̄ip̄ere,¹ nōn dāre consuērint²; ējus rei pōpūlum Rōmānum ess̄e testem. 2. Lēgāti dixērunt sēsē hābēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu āb eo pētēre vellent. 3. Lōcūtus est prō his Divitiācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnes ess̄e duas: hārum³ altērius⁴ princ̄ipātum tēnēre Aeduos, altērius Arvernos. 4. Dixit hōrum³ prīmo cīrtēr mīlia quindēcīm Rhēnum transisse: posteāquām agros ēt cultum ēt cōpias⁵ Gallōrum hōmīnes fēri āc barbāri ādāmas-sent, trāductos⁶ plūres:¹¹ nunc ess̄e ūn Gallia ād centūm ēt vīgintī mīlium nūmērum. 5. Dixit cūm his Aeduos eōrumquē clientes sēmēl atquē itērūm armis⁷ contendisse; magnam cālā-mītātem pulsos⁸ accēpis̄e, omnem nōbīlītātem, omnem sēnā-tum, omnem ēquītātum⁹ āmīs̄e. 6. An̄imadvertisit Caesar ūnos ex omnībus Sēquānos nīhīl eārum rērum³ fācēre, quas cētēri fācērent, sēd tristes cāp̄ite¹⁰ dēmissō terrām intuēri.

Notes.

¹ See 69.² See 139 and LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.⁴ altērius modifies factiōnis understood.⁵ cōpias, wealth.⁷ See 54.⁹ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 10.¹¹ plus is declined as follows:

	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nom. plūs,} \\ \text{Gen. plūris,} \\ \text{Dat. ——} \\ \text{Acc. plūs,} \\ \text{Abl. ——} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plūres,} \\ \text{plūrium,} \\ \text{plūribus,} \\ \text{plūres,} \\ \text{plūribus,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plūra,} \\ \text{plūrium,} \\ \text{plūribus,} \\ \text{plūra,} \\ \text{plūribus.} \end{array} \right.$

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

Sī pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm Helvētiis fāciet, īn eam partem **ibunt** atquē ībi **erunt** Helvēti, ūbi eos **tu** constītū**eris** atquē esse vōlu**eris**; sīn bello persēqui persēvērā**bis**, rēmīniscē**re** ēt vētēris incom-mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people **shall** make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii **will** go into that part and stay where **you shall** have determined and wished that they should be ; but if **you shall** persist in continuing war, recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Indirect Discourse.

Is ītā cūm Caesāre ēgit: Sī pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm Helvētiis fācē**ret**, īn eam partem **itūros** atquē ībi **fūtūros** Helvētios, ūbi eos **Caesar** constītū**isset** atquē esse vōlu**isset**; sīn bello persēqui persēvērā**ret**, rēmīniscē**ret** ēt vētēris incom-mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

He treated with Caesar as follows: If the Roman people **should** make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii **would** go into that part and stay where **Caesar should** have determined and wished that they should be ; but if **he should** persist in continuing war, **let him** recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa¹ praedīcāvit: Transisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte,² sēd rōgātum³ ēt arcessītum³ ā Gallis; nōn sīnē magna spe magnīsquē praemiis dōmum prōpinquosquē rēlīquisse: sēdes hābēre⁴ ī Gallia ab ipsis⁵ concessas,⁶ obsides ipsōrum⁶ vōluntātē² dātos; stīpendium cāpēre⁴ jūre⁷ belli,

quod⁸ victores victis⁹ impōnēre consuērint.¹⁰ 2. His Caesar itā respondit : Eo¹¹ sibi mīnūs dūbītatiōnis¹² dāri, quōd eas res, quas lēgāti Helvētii commēmōrassent,¹⁰ mēmōriā²¹ tēnēret, atquē eo¹³ grāvius ferre, quo¹³ mīnūs mērīto⁷ pōpūli Rōmāni accīdissent : qui si¹⁴ alīcūjus injūriāe¹⁵ sibi¹⁶ conscius fuisse, nōn fuisse diffīcile cāvēre¹⁷; sed eo¹¹ dēceptum,¹⁸ quod nēque commissum¹⁹ a se intelligēret, quāre tīmēret, nēque sīne causa tīmendum²⁰ pūtāret.

Notes.

1 A. & G. 188: A. & S. 438 (3): B. 269: B. & M. 658: G. 195,
REMARK 2: H. 441: C. 113, 7.

2 See 79.

3 See 121 and Exs. 3 and 4.

4 hābēre, capēre, sc. sē.

5 ipsis, sc. Gallis.

6 concessas, from concēdo; ipsōrum, *their own*.

7 The *Ablative of Cause* often designates that *in accordance with* which anything is done : jūre, *in accordance with the law*.

8 See 115.

9 A. & G. 188: A. & S. 438 (2): B. 269: B. & M. 658: G. 195,
REMARK 1: H. 441, 1; this rule includes Particles and Pronouns:
C. 251, 8. For the *case of victis*, see 67.

10 See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 11.

11 eo, *for this reason*.

12 See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

13 See GEN. VY. under eo.

14 qui si, *if they*.

15 See 140.

16 See 86; translate, *on their part*.

17 See 129.

18 dēceptum, sc. essē sē.

19 commissum, sc. essē alīquid.

20 tīmendum, sc. sibi essē, and see 130.

21 See 54.



LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

Write in Latin.

- Caesar replies : The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give¹ hostages. 2. He in-

forms Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many² (things) : (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because³ we had been invited³ by the Sequani ; we did not set out from home⁴ without great rewards ; we have among the Helvētii large possessions, granted to us with their own⁵ consent ;⁶ we levied tribute on the conquered⁷ in accordance with the law⁸ of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind ; that you had been deceived for this reason,⁹ that¹⁰ you had neither done anything for which¹¹ you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear¹² without a reason.

Notes.

¹ See 139.² See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.³ See 121 and Ex. 3.⁴ See 107.⁵ *their own, ipsōrum.*⁶ See 79.⁷ See 67 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.¹⁰ *that, quōd.*⁸ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.¹² See 130 and 131.⁹ *for this reason, eo.*¹¹ *for which, quārē.*

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. 295: A. & S. 548 (1): B. 324: B. & M. 1319; 1321: G. 426; 427: H. 541; 542, I.-IV.: C. 252.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hostībus pugnandi pōtestātem fēcit,** *he gave the enemy an opportunity FOR FIGHTING.*

2. **Bellandi cūpīdi, fond OF CARRYING ON WAR.**
3. **Diem ād dēlibērandum sūmet, he will take a day for DELIBERATING.**
4. **Rēpēriēbat īn quaerendo, he found on INQUIRING.**
5. **Stūdium pugnandi, a desire FOR FIGHTING.**

Analyze and parse.¹

1. Qua dē causa hōmīnes bellandi² cūpīdi magno dōlōre³ affīciēbantur. 2. His rēbus adducti ēt auctōrītāte Orgētōrīgis permōti, constītuērunt ea, quae ād prōfīciscendum pertīnērent,⁴ compārāre. 3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ād dēlibērandum sumptūrum.⁵ 4. Rēpēriēbat īn quaerendo Caesar īnītium ējus fūgāe factum⁶ ā Dumnōrīge atquē ējus ēquītībus. 5. Caesar Divitiācum consolātus rōgat, fīnem ūrandi fāciat.⁶ 6. Ariovistus, quūm nēquē ādītum nēquē causam postūlandi justam hābēret,⁷ libērālītāte⁸ sēnātus ea praemia consēcūtus est. 7. Caesar lōquendi fīnem fācit sēquē ād suos⁹ rēcipit, suisquē impērāvit nē quod¹⁰ omnīno tēlum īn hostes rējīcērent. 8. Multo¹¹ mājor ālacrītas stūdiumquē pugnandi mājus exer-cītui injectum est. 9. Proxīmo die Caesar āciem instruxit hostībusquē¹² pugnandi pōtestātem fēcit.¹³ 10. Itā nostri⁹ acrītēr īn hostes signo¹⁴ dāto impētum fēcērunt, ūt spātium pīla īn hostes conjīciendi nōn dārētūr.¹⁵

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war.
2. We shall take ten days for deliberating.
3. We shall ask them to make⁶ an end of entreating.
4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.¹⁶
5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them.
6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us.
7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns.
8. They

said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. 9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things¹⁷ by reason of your generosity.⁸

Notes.

¹ Parse the Gerunds like nouns. ² See **140**.

³ A. & G. **248**, R. : A. & S. **410** (2) : B. **259**, RULE XLIV. : B. & M. **873** : G. **401** : H. **419**, III. : C. **166**, 1.

⁴ A. & G. **320** : A. & S. **500** (2), (d) : B. **301** : B. & M. **1218** : G. **633** : H. **500**, I. : C. **223**, 1.

⁵ *essē* is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

⁶ See **136** and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3 ; *üt*, as here, is sometimes omitted.

⁷ See **145**.

⁸ See **79**.

⁹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

¹⁰ See **116**, *second part*.

¹¹ See **144**.

¹² See **39**.

¹³ See EXAMPLE 1.

¹⁴ See **122** and Ex. 2, b.

¹⁵ See **139**.

¹⁶ *all of us, omnibus nōbis* ; see **67**.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. The Gerundive. A. & G. **296** : A. & S. **548** (2); **550** : B. **325**, RULE LXXVI. : B. & M. **1322** : G. **428** : H. **543** : C. **252**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad mīnuendam grātiām**, *for* DIMINISHING *popularity*.
2. **Ad eas res conficiendas** **Orgētōrix dēlīgitur**, *Orgetorix is chosen to EXECUTE these plans*.
3. **Spem regni obtīnendi**, *the hope OF OBTAINING the sovereignty*.
4. **Dātā făcūltătē itinēris făciēndi**, *if an opportunity for marching should be granted*.

Analyze, and parse.

1. Quibus öpibus¹ ac nervis non solum ad mnuendam² gratiā,³ sed paenē ad perniciem suam uteretur.⁴ 2. Ipse in cītēriōrem Galliam ad conventus ägendos pröfectus est. 3. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis essē duxerunt. 4. In Gallia ab his, qui ad condūcendos homines facultates habebant, regna occūpabantur. 5. Ea, quae ad effemīnandos anīmos pertīnent, important. 6. Dēcima lēgio se essē ad bellum gērendum pārātissimam confirmāvit. 7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae cīvītates ad se oppugnandum vēnisse. 8. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portatūri erant,⁵ combūrunt, ut dōmūm⁶ rēdītiōnis spe⁷ sublāta⁸ pārātiōres ad omnia pērīcula sūbeunda essent. 9. Liscus dīcit sī quid accīdat⁹ Rōmānis, summam in spēm¹⁰ pēr Helvētios regni obtīnendi Dumnōrīgem vēnīre. 10. Hac orātiōne habītā¹¹ summa alacrītas et cūpīdītas belli gērendi innāta est. 11. Nēquē homines inmīco anīmo,¹² dātā facultate pēr prōvinciam itinēris faciēndī, tempētūros¹³ ab injūria et mālefīcio existimāvit. 12. Hoc proelio facto rēlīquas cōpias Helvētiōrum ut consēqui posset,¹⁴ pontem in Arāre faciendum cūrat¹⁵ atquē Itā exēcītum trādūcit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men.
2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city.
3. We entertain¹⁰ the highest hope of establishing friendship with all.
4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls if anything happens⁹ to us.
5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans.
6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix.
7. Let us not import¹⁶ those things which tend to enervate the mind.
8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace

with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

¹ See **104.**

² Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.

³ **grātiām**, sc. **suam**.

⁴ **ūtērētur**, translate by the Indicative.

⁵ See LN. LXX., Ex. 2.

⁶ See **105**; **dōmum** limits the idea of *motion* in the verbal noun **rēdītiōnis**.

⁷ See **122.**

⁸ From **tollo**.

⁹ **accidat**, translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (**152**)

¹⁰ **in spem vēnio**, *I entertain the hope.*

¹¹ See LN. LXIV., NOTE 2.

¹² See **144**, a.

¹³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

¹⁴ See **136**.

¹⁵ **pontem — curat**, *he attends to building a bridge over the Sabine*; lit., *he cares for a bridge to be built*, etc. How is *Sabne* pronounced?

¹⁶ See **134.**



LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. The Supine. A. & G. **302**; **303**: A. & S. **554** (2); **555**: B. **326**, RULES LXXVII. and LXXVIII. : B. & M. **1360**; **1365**: G. **435—437**: H. **546—547**: C. **253**; **254**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Lēgātos mittunt rōgātūm auxīliūm**, *they send legates to ask for aid.*
2. **Perfācile factū**, *very easy to do.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Aedui, quūm sē suāquē¹ āb iis dēfendēre nōn possent,² lēgātos ād Caesārem mittunt rōgātūm auxīlium. 2. Bello Helvētiōrum confecto tōtīus fērē Galliae lēgāti, princīpes³ cī-vītātum, ād Caesārem grātūlātūm convēnērunt. 3. Lēgāti āb Aeduīs ēt ā Trēvīris vēniēbant; Aeduī⁴ questūm quōd Harūdes, qui nūpēr ūn Galliam transportāti essent,⁵ fīnes eōrum pōpūlārentur²; sēsē nē obsidībus quīdēm dātis pācem Ariovisti rēdīmēre pōtuisse. 4. Divitiācus dixit ūb eam rem sē ex cīvītāte prōfūgisse ēt Rōmam⁶ ād sēnātūm vēnisce auxīlium postūlātūm, quōd sōlus nēquē jūrejūrando nēquē obsidībus tēnērētūr. 5. Liscus dīcit Dumnōrīgem ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābēre, sōrōrem ex matrē⁷ ēt prōpinquas suas nuptūm ūn ūlias cīvītātes collōcasse. 6. Hostis⁸ est uxor invīta⁹ quae ād vīrum nuptūm dātūr. 7. Perfācīle factū essē illis prōbat cōnāta perfīcēre, proptērē quōd ipse suaē cīvītātis impēriū obtentūrus esset.¹⁰

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops.
2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid.
3. Since we cannot² defend ourselves and our possessions¹¹ from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva⁶ to ask for aid.
4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them).
5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him).
6. Ambassadors came from all the states ; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed² the Rhine to attack¹² their towns ; (saying that) not even after a pledge¹³ had been given were they able to establish peace.
7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do.
8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. **19**, c: A. & S. **35**: B. **24**, Exc. 3: B. & M. **21**: G. **14**.
REMARK 1: H. **18**, 2, 1): C. **11**.

² See **149**.

³ See **25**.

⁴ Aedui, sc. věniābant.

⁵ See A. & G. **342**: A. & S. **523**: B. **310**, RULE LXIX.: B. & M. **1291**: G. **666**: H. **529**, II.: C. **226**.

⁶ See **105**.

⁷ sōrōrem ex matre, *his half-sister.* ⁸ See **64**.

⁹ invita, *against her will;* it modifies quae.

¹⁰ See LN. LXX. and **149**.

¹¹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

¹² See **155**.

¹³ See **122**.



LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.—ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. NOTE, **376**, *a-d*: A. & S. **660** (1)–(4), *a, b*, NOTES 1, 2, (5), *a*: B. **374**, *a-c*: B. & M. **1524**–**1537**: G. APPENDIX, page **387**: H. **641**–**645**: C. **313**.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. **80**, *a-d*: A. & S. **666**, *d*; B. **373**: B. & M. **1538**–**1542**: H. **649**–**650**: C. **317**, 1.

VOCABULARY.

Jānuāriūs, ā, ūm, (Jān.)	of January.
Februāriūs, ā, ūm, (Febr.)	of February.
Martiūs, ā, ūm, (Mart.)	of March.
Aprīlis, ē, (Apr.)	of April.
Māiūs, ā, ūm, (Māi.)	of May.
Jūniūs, ā, ūm, (Jūn.)	of June.
Quintīlis, ē, (Quint.)	of July.
Sextīlis, ē, (Sext.)	of August.
Septembēr, br̄is, br̄ě, (Sept.)	of September.
Octōbēr, br̄is, br̄ě, (Oct.)	of October.
Nōvembēr, br̄is, br̄ě, (Nōv.)	of November.
Děcembēr, br̄is, br̄ě, (Děc.)	of December.

Kälendae, ārūm, (Käl.) f. pl.,	<i>Calends</i> ; the first day of the Roman month.
Nōnae, ārūm, (Nōn.) f. pl.	<i>Nones</i> ; the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.
Idūs, uūm, (Id.) f. pl.,	<i>Ides</i> ; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.
priđiē, (pr. or priđ.) adv.,	<i>the day before.</i>

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Gěnāvam Kälendis¹ ipsis Növembrībus² occūpābit.
2. Qui dies ērit a. d. VI. Käl. Növ.³ (antē diem sextum Kälendas Növembres).
3. C.⁴ Jūlius Caesar Idībus Martiis occīsus est.
4. M. Tullius Cīcero a. d. III. Nōn. Jān. nātus est.
5. P. Scīpio a. d. XVII. Käl. Māi. mortuus est.
6. Ap. Claudius a. d. II. Nōn. Apr. īn sēnātu lōcūtus est.
7. Ti. Gracchus Nōnis Jūniis Rōmā⁵ prōfectus est.
8. M. Mānīlius ād Rōmam prōfectus est a. d. VI. Id. Sext.
9. Multa verba ūrātōres fāciunt a. d. IV. Nōn. Quint.
10. C. Caesar priđ. Nōn.⁶ Febr. castra mōvit.
11. Dixi ēgo īn sēnātu caedem tē contūlisse⁷ princīpum īn a. d. V. Käl. Növ.
12. Caedem princīpum contūlisti ex a. d. V. Käl. Dēc. ād pr. Käl.⁶ Jān.
13. T. Labiēnus priđ. Id.⁶ Sept. hostes sūpērāvit.
14. Is dies ērat a. d. V. Käl. Apr. L. Pīsōne A. Gābīnio consūlībus.⁸
15. Sī quid vellent, ād Id. Apr. rēvertērentur.
16. Hōrum est nēmo qui nesciat⁹ tē priđ. Käl.⁶ Jān. stētisse īn cōmītio cūm tēlo.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Gaius Cassius was born on the 31st of October.
2. Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May.
3. Gaius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January.
4. Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July.
5. Tiberius Gracchus will

break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.⁸ 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know⁹ that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

¹ See **111.**

² The Latin names of months are adjectives.

³ Such an expression as *antē diem sextum Kälendas Növembres* is treated as a *single word*; hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions *in*, *ex*, and rarely by *ād*, as in sentences 11 and 12.

⁴ *Gaius*: Latin pronunciation, *Gáh-yoos*; English pronunciation, *Gá-yus*.

⁵ See **107.**

⁶ See A. & G. **261**, *a*: A. & S. **660**, *a*, NOTE 1: B. & M. **1010**: H. **437**, 1: C. **313**, 3, *at end*.

⁷ From *conféro*.

⁸ See **122.**

⁹ A. & G. **320**: A. & S. **500**, *a*: B. **301**, 5: B. & M. **1218**: G. **634**: H. **503**, 1: C. **223**, 3.

LESSON XCI.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. **prīma lūce**, *at daybreak, at earliest dawn*.
2. **multo die**, *late in the day*.
3. **prīma nocte**, *in the first part of the night*.
4. **ād multam noctem**, *till late at night*.
5. **prīdiē ējūs diēi**, *on the day before*.
6. **postrīdiē ējūs diēi**, *on the following day*.

Translate and parse.

1. Prīma lūce,¹ quūm summus mons ā T. Lăbiēno tēnērētur,² ipse āb hostium castris nōn longius mille ēt quingentis passībus³ abesset, Considius ēquo⁴ admisso ād eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Lăbiēno occūpāri vōluērit,⁵ āb hostībus tēnēri. 2. Multo dēnīquē die pēr explōrātōres Caesar cognōvit ēt montem ā suis tēnēri ēt Helvētios castra mōvisse ēt Considium tīmōre perterrītum, quōd nōn vīdisset, prō vīso sībi rēnunciasse.⁶ 3. Circitēr hōmīnum⁷ mīlia sex prīma nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ād Rhēnum fīnesquē Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctēm ētiām ād impēdīmenta pugnātum est, proptērēa quōd prō vallo carros objēcērant. 5. Collōquendi⁸ Caesāri causā vīsa nōn est, ēt eo⁹ māgīs, quōd prīdiē ejus diēi¹⁰ Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērant, quīn¹¹ ī nostros tēla conjīcērent.¹¹ 6. Postrīdiē ējus diēi¹⁰ praetēr castra Caesāris suas cōpias trāduxit ēt mīlībus¹² passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit. 7. Postrīdiē ējus diēi Caesar praeſīdium utrisque castris, quōd sātīs essē vīsum est, rēlīquit.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,¹³ and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We stayed at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference⁸ does not seem good to us, and the more⁹ because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling¹¹ missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the literal meaning of **prima luce**? Why is the Ablative used?

² Why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. **325**; A. & S. **509**, *a*; B. **304**, RULE LXV.; B. & M. **1244**; G. **581**, II.; H. **521**, II., 2; C. **214**, 5.

³ See **133**.

⁴ See **122**; what is the literal meaning of **ēquo admissō**?

⁵ What mood is **vōluērit**? Why is that mood used in this clause? See **152**.

⁶ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

⁷ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. ⁸ See **153**.

⁹ **eo māgis**, *the more*; for **eo**, see **79**.

¹⁰ See A. & G. **214**, *g* on p. 208; A. & S. **355 b**; B. & M. **1005**; H. **398**, 5; C. **133**, 7, 1.

¹¹ **quīn—conjic̄rent**, *from hurling*; why is the Imperfect used? See **135**; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. **319**, *d*; A. & S. **493**, (2); B. **297**, RULE LX.; B. & M. **1218**; G. **551**; H. **504**; C. **211**.

¹² See **147**.

¹³ *at full speed*, **ēquis admissis**; why the Plural?



LESSON XCII.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. **plūs posse**, *to be more powerful*.
2. **plūrīmum posse**, *to be the most powerful, or to be very powerful*.
3. **ei grātias āgēre**, *to thank him*.
4. **nōbis est ī ānímo īter fācēre**, *we intend to march*.
5. **lātēre āperto**, *on the unprotected flank*.
6. **ex ēquis**, *on horseback*.
7. **měmōriā tēnēre**, *to remember*.
8. **maxīmis pōtest ītīnērībus**, *by the longest possible marches*.

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dicit essē nonnullos, qui prīvātim plus¹ possint² quām ipsi māgistrātūs. 2. Nōn ērat dūbium, quīn tōtūs Galliae plūrīmum¹ Helvētīi possent.³ 3. Dumnōrix grātiā ēt largītiōne āpūd Sēquānos plūrīmum pōtērat. 4. Divitiācus dixit eos, qui ēt sua virtūte ēt pōpūli Rōmāni hospītio atquē āmīcītia plūrīmum antē īn Gallia pōtuissent,² coactos essē⁴ Sēquānis⁵ obsides dāre. 5. Děčīma lēgio pēr trībūnos mīlītūm ei grātias ēgit. 6. Caesāri rēnunciātūr⁶ Helvētīis⁷ essē īn ānīmo pēr agrum Sēquānōrum ēt Aeduōrum īter īn Santōnum fīnes fācēre. 7. Helvētīi lēgātos ād eum mittunt⁸ qui dīcērent⁹ sībi essē īn ānīmo sīnē ullo mālēfīcio īter pēr prōvinciam fācēre. 8. Pars āperto lātēre¹⁰ lēgiōnes circumvēnīre coepit.¹¹ 9. Capto monte¹² Boii ēt Tulingi nostros lātēre āperto aggressi circumvēnīre coēprunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex ēquis ūt collōquērentur¹³ ēt praeter sē dēnos ūt ād collōquium addūcērent,¹³ postūlāvit. 11. Eōrum ūna pars, quām Gallos obtīnēre dictum est,¹⁴ attingit āb¹⁵ Sēquānis ēt Helvētīis flūmen Rhēnum. 12. Id¹⁶ hōc fācīlius eis persuāsit, quōd undīquē lōci nātūrā Helvētīi contīnentur. 13. Mōrībus¹⁷ suis Orgetōrīgem ex vincūlis¹⁸ causam dīcēre coēgērunt; damnātūm¹⁹ poenam sēqui ōportēbat,²⁰ ūt igni crēmārētur. 14. Caesar, quōd mēmōriā²¹ tēnēbat²² L. Cassium consūleū occīsum exercītumquē ejus āb Helvētīis pulsum²³ ēt sūb jūgum missum,²³ concēdendum²⁴ nōn pūtābat. 15. Caesāri quūm id²⁵ nunciātūm esset,²⁶ eos pēr prōvinciam nostram īter fācēre cōnāri,²⁷ mātūrat āb urbe prōfīcisci ēt quām maxīmis pōtest ītīnērībus²¹ īn Galliam ultēriōrem contendit ēt ād Gēnēvam pervēnit. 16. Itāquē re¹² frūmentāriā quām cēlerrīme pōtuit cōmpārātā magnis ītīnērībus ād Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dīcīt Dumnōrīgem complūres annos²⁸ portōria rēlīquāque²⁹ omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvo prētio rēdempta hābēre,³⁰ proptērēa quōd illo¹² līcente contrā līcēri audeat³¹ nēmo.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See A. & G. 240, *a*: A. & S. 397: B. 222, RULE XIII.: B. & M. 728: G. 331, REMARKS 2 and 3: H. 378: C. 128, 2.
- ² Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause? See 152.
- ³ Why the Subjunctive? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.
- ⁴ From *cōgo*. ⁵ See 39.
- ⁶ What is the subject of *rēnunciātūr*? What is it that *is reported to Caesar*?
- ⁷ See 137; what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do*? What then is the subject of *essē*?
- ⁸ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.
- ⁹ See 136 and Example 10; what question does *qui dicērent* answer?
- ¹⁰ *lätēre* is an Ablative of *Place*, answering the question *Where*?
- ¹¹ What kind of a verb is *coepit*? See 127.
- ¹² See 122. ¹³ See 136 and Example 9.
- ¹⁴ What is the subject of *dictum est*?
- ¹⁵ *āb*, *on the side of*.
- ¹⁶ *id — quōd*, *he persuaded them to this the more easily, because*; lit., *he persuaded this to them, etc.*; for *hōc*, see 79.
- ¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.
- ¹⁸ *ex vincūlis*, *in chains*; what is its literal meaning?
- ¹⁹ *damnātūm*, *if condemned*; see 121; it modifies *eūm* understood, the object of *sēqui*.
- ²⁰ What kind of a verb is *ōportēbat*? See 128; what is its subject? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.
- ²¹ See 54.
- ²² What kind of a clause is *quōd — tēnēbat*? See 149; what is the object of *tēnēbat*?
- ²³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.
- ²⁴ *concedendūm*, sc. *essē*; translate, *that it ought to be granted*.
- ²⁵ To what does *id* refer? What *had been reported to Caesar*?
- ²⁶ See LN. XCI., NOTE 2. ²⁷ *cōnāri* is in apposition with *id*.
- ²⁸ See 93. ²⁹ See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.
- ³⁰ *rēdempta hābēre*, *had bought up*.
- ³¹ What kind of a verb is *audeat*? See A. & G. 136: A. & S. 196, *a*: B. 110, *a*: B. & M. 312: G. 182: H. 268, 3 : C. 81, 1.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvius laqueis irretitus muscūlum exorāvit, ut eum, corrōsis plagis, liberāret. Quo facto, milvius liberātus murem arripuit et devorāvit.

Haēc fabūla ostendit, quam gratiam mali pro beneficiis red-dere soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stans in tecto domus, lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupus, *Non tu, inquit, sed tectum mihi maledicīt.*

Saepe locus et tempus homīnes timīdos audāces reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pavo, coram grue pennas suas explīcans, *Quanta est*, inquit, *formositas mea et tua deformitas!* At grus evōlans, *Et quanta est, inquit, levitas mea et tua tarditas!*

Monet haec fabūla, ne ob aliquod bonum, quod nobis natūra tribuit, alios contemnāmus, quibus natūra alia et fortasse ma-jōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspicatus, *Cur non, inquit, relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in herbidos campos, qui tibi laetum pabulum offérunt?* Cui respondit capra: *Mihi non est in animo dulcia tutis praeponere*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis jacēbat in praesēpi bovesque latrando a pabulo arcēbat. Cui unus boum, *Quanta ista, inquit, invidia est, quod non patēris ut eo cibo vescāmur, quem tu ipse capere nec velis nec possis!*

Haec fabula invidiae indolem declarat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Vulpes, quae nunquam leōnem vidērat, quum ei forte occurisset, ita est perterrita, ut paene moreretur formidine. Eundem conspicata itērum, timuit quidem, sed nequāquam, ut antea. Tertio illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accēdere eumque allōqui.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prato pascebantur tres boves in maxima concordia, et sic ab omni ferarum incursiōne tunī erant. Sed dissidio inter illos orto, singuli a feris petiti et laniati sunt.

Fabula docet quantum boni sit in concordia.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asinus, pelle leonis indūtus, territabat homines et bestias tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures

eminēbant ; unde agnītus in pistrīnum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

Haec fabūla stolīdos notat, qui immer̄tis honor̄bus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae ei quotidie ovum pariebat aureum. Hinc suspicāri coepit, illam auri massam intus celāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in ea repērit, nisi quod in aliis gallīnis reperīri solet. Itāque dum majorībus divitiis inhiābat, etiam minōres perdīdit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo qui unā iter faciēbant, as̄num oberrantem in solitu-
dine conspicāti, accurrunt laeti, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre
coepit, quod eum prior conspexisset. Dum vero contendunt
et rixantur, nec a verberībus abstinent, as̄nus aufūgit et
neuter eo potitur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubīcen ab hostībus captus, *Ne me*, inquit, *interficīte* ; nam *inermis sum*, neque *quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam*. At hostes, *Propter hoc ipsum*, inquiunt, *te interimēmus, quod, quum ipse pugnandi sis imperītus, alios ad pugnam incitāre soles*.

Fabūla docet, non solum malefīcos esse puniendos sed etiam eos, qui alios ad male faciendum irritent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpes uvam in vite conspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, si eam forte attingēre posset.

Tandem defatigāta ināni labōre discēdens dixit : *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tollerem.*

Haec fabūla docet, multos ea contemnēre, quae se assēqui posse despērent.

13. The Mice.

Mures aliquando habuērunt consilium, quomodo sibi a fele cavērent. Multis aliis propositis, omnibus placuit ut ei tintinnabūlum annexerētur ; sic enim ipsos sonītu admoniōtos eam fugēre posse. Sed quum jam inter mures quaererētur, qui feli tintinnabūlum annexerēret, nemo repertus est.

Fabūla docet, in suadendo plurimos esse audāces, sed in ipso pericūlo timīdos.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucībus lupi os inhaesērat. Mercēde iḡitur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrahat. Hoc grus longitudīne colli facile effēcit. Quum autem mercēdem postulāret, subrīdens lupus et dentībus infrendens, *Num tibi, inquit, parva merces vidētur, quod caput incolūme ex lupi faucībus extraristi?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissimis temporībus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicītur. Ibi haud procul a Janicūlo arcem condīdit, ēainque Saturniam appellāvit. Hic Itālos primus agricultūram docuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Postea Latīnus in illis regionib⁹ imperāvit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum peperc̄erat, aufūgit et in Italiam pervenit. Ibi Latīnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condidit, quam in honōrem conjūgis Lavinium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accēpit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum transtūlit, urbemque condidit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genītus erat. Ejus postēri omnes usque ad Romanam conditam Albae regnavērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Unus horum regum, Romūlus Silvius, se Jove majōrem esse dicēbat, et, quum tonāret, militib⁹ imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutērent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariōrem esse quam tonitru. Fulmīne ictus et in Albānum lacum praecepitātus est.

5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios reliquit Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optionem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numitor paterna bona praetūlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissīme possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidias interēmit et filiam fratris Rheam Silviam

Vestālem virgīnem fecit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotībus non licet viro nubēre. Sed haec a Marte gemīnos filios Romūlum et Remum pepērit. Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem in vincūla conjēcit, puēros autem in Tibērim abjīci jussit.

7. Forte Tibēris aqua ultra ripam se effudērat, et, quum puēri in vado essent posīti, aqua refluens eos in sicco relīquit. Ad eōrum vagītum lupa accurrit, eosque uberībus suis aluit. Quod videns Faustūlus quidam, pastor illīus regiōnis, puēros sustūlit et uxōri Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Romūlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transegerunt. Quum adolevissent et forte compcrissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium interfecērunt et Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīno quam Romūlus a suo nomīne Romam vocāvit. Haec quum moenībus circumdarētur, Remus occīsus est, dum fratrem irrīdens moenia transiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Romūlus, ut civium numērum augēret, asylum patēfēcit, ad quod multi ex civitatībus suis pulsi accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis civībus conjūges deērant. Festum itāque Neptūni et ludos instituit. Ad hos quum multi ex finitīmis popūlis cum mulierībus et libēris venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos spectantes virgīnes rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpeia.

10. Popūli illi, quorum virgīnes raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōres suscepērunt. Quum Romae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpeiam virgīnem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra pro-

curābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscēret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistris manībus gerērent, ānūlos aureos et armillas signifīcans. At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manībus gerēbānt.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Romūlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres hinc conjūges et socēros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facērent. Utrīque his precībus commōti sunt. Romūlus foedus icit et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12. Postea civitātem descripsit. Centum senatōres legit eosque quum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iis debītam patres appellāvit. Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque raptārum nominībus nuncupāvit. Anno regni tricesīmo septīmo, quum exercītum lustrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente oculis homīnum subductus est. Hinc alii eum a senatorībus interfectum, alii ad deos sublātum esse existimavērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius, B. C. 716 - 673.

13. Post Romūli mortem unīus anni interregnum fuit. Quo elapso, Numa Pompilius Curībus, urbe in agro Sabinōrum, natus rex creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit; nec minus tamen civitāti profuit. Nam et leges dedit, et sacra plurīma instituit, ut popūli barbāri et bellicōsi mores mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, se nymphae Egeriae,

conjūgis suæ, jussu facere dicēbat. Morbo decessit, quadragesimo tertio impéri anno.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius, B. C. 673 – 641.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cujus avus se in bello adversus Sabīnos fortem et strenuum virum praestit̄erat. Rex creātus bellum Albānis indixit, idque trigeminōrum Horatiōrum et Curiatiōrum certamīne finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Metti Fufēti diruit. Quum triginta duōbus annis regnasset, fulmīne ictus cum domo sua arsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius, B. C. 640 – 616.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte et religiōne avo similis, Latīnos bello domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei moenia circumdedit. Carcērem primus aedificāvit. Ad Tibēris ostia urbem condidit, Ostiamque vocāvit. Vicesimo quarto anno impéri morbo obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus, B. C. 616 – 578.

16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etruriam venērat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat. Avenienti aquila pileum abstūlit, et, postquam alte evolavērat, reposuit. Hinc Tanāquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perīta, regnum ei portendi intellexit.

17. Quum Romæ commorarētur, Anci regis familiaritatēm consecūtus est, qui eum filiorum suōrum tutōrem reliquit. Sed is pupillis regnum intercēpit. Senatorib⁹, quos Romūlus creavērat, centum alios addidit, qui minōrum gentium sunt

appellāti. Plura bella feliciter gessit, nec paucos agros hostiis ademptos urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans urbem intrāvit. Cloācas fecit; Capitolium inchoāvit. Tricesimo octāvo impēri anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum eripuērat, occīsus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius, B. C. 578 – 534.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genitus ex nobili femīna, captīva tamen et famūla. Quum in domo Tarquini Prisci educarētur, flamma in ejus cap̄te visa est. Hoc prodigo Tanāquil ei summam dignitātem portendi intellexit, et conjūgi persuāsit, ut eum sicūti liberos suos educāret. Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.

19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanāquil de superiore parte domus popūlum allocūta est, dicens; *regem grave quidem sed non letāle vulnus accepisse; eum petere, ut popūlus, dum convaluisset, Servio Tullio obedīret.* Sic Servius regnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montes tres urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordināvit. Sub eo Roma habuit octoginta tria milia civium Romanōrum cum his, qui in agris erant.

20. Hic rex interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et Tarquini Superbi, fili ejus regis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipso Tarquinio de gradībus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prima conjūgem regem salutāvit. Quum domum redīret, aurīgam super patris corpus in via jacens carpentum agere jussit.

**Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome,
B. C. 534 – 510.**

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen morib⁹ meruit. Bello tamen strenuus plures finitimōrum populōrum vicit. Tem-

plum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Latī, imperium perdīdit. Nam quum filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissimae femīnae, conjūgi Tarquini Collatīni, vim fecisset, haec se ipsam occīdit in conspectu marīti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuērat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatīnus, aliīque nonnulli in exitium regis conjurārunt, populōque persuasērunt, ut ei portas urbis claudēret. Exercitus quoque, qui civitātem Ardeam cum rege oppugnābat, eum relīquit. Fugit itāque cum uxōre et libēris suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnavērunt annos ducentos quadraginta tres.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. *ut — liberāret*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — *corrōsis plagis*, by gnawing the nets; see 122. — *quo*, see 122; what is its antecedent? — *ostendit*, what is its object? — *mali*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *soleant*, see 151 and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

2. *lupo*, see 132. — *praetereunti* (praeter and eo), see 126; translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. — *inquit*, see A. & G. 144, b: A. & S. 249 (5): B. 111, c, 2: B. & M. 444: G. 190, 2: H. 297, II., 2: C. 86, 2. — *reddit*, see A. & G. 205, b: A. & S. 320: B. 287, a: B. & M. 644: G. 281, EXCEPTION 2: H. 463, II., 2: C. 110, 2, b.

3. *explicans, spreading*. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *ali-quod*, see 116, a. — *quod*, see 34 and 115. — *contemnāmus*, see 136. — *alia, majōra*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. *laetum, abundant*. — *mihi*, see 137. — *est*, what is its subject? — *dulcia*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — *tutis*, see 67.

5. *boves*, see A. & G. 61, page 33: A. & S. 110, *bōs*: B. 138: B. & M. 123: G. 80: H. 66: C. 31. — *latrando*, see 153 and 54. — *quod* —

patēris, see 149.—cibo, see 54 and 104.—velis, see 125 and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. occurisset, see A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, *a*: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 521, II., 2: C. 214, 5.—more-rētur, see 139.—nequāquam, antea, what do they modify?—obviam facta, having met; obviam is used with the Dative.—ausa est, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. pascebantur, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? see 36.—boves, see note on boves, Fable 5.—petiti, sc. sunt.—boni, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.—sit, see 151.

8. pelle, see 54.—indūtus, *having clothed himself*.—esset, see A. & G. 312: A. & S. 481, (2): G. 604: H. 513, II.: C. 220.—movet, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11.—unde, *for which reason*, i. e. because his ears stuck out.—agnītus, from agnosco; render as if it were agnītus est, and supply and.—dedit, suffered.—honorib⁹, see 79.

9. suspicārī, see 69.—coepit, see 127.—illam, why in the Accusative? why Feminine?—quod is here equivalent to id quod; compare the English *what*, equivalent to *that which*.—solet, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.—majorib⁹, see 84 and 85.—divitiis, see 67.—minōres, what does it modify?

10. duo, see 108 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.—accurrunt, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.—laeti, *joyfully*; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557, *h*: B. 270, *b*: B. & M. 663: G. 324, REMARK 6: H. 443: C. 113, 6.—prior, see note on laeti; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned.—conspexisset, see 149.—eo, see 104.

11. tubīcen, what is its derivation? see GEN. Vy.—inquit, see note on inquit, Fable 2.—interficide, see 47.—inermis, derivation? see GEN. Vy.—propter hoc ipsum, *for this very reason*; what is the reason?—pugnandi, see 153 and 140.—sis, see 145.—soles, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.—esse puniendos, see 130.—eos, why in the Accusative?—irritent, see A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, (2), (d): B. 301: B. & M. 1220, *b*: G. 633: H. 500, I.: C. 223, 1.

12. vulpes, see A. & G. 30, *b*: A. & S. 84: B. 118, III., REM. 2: B. & M. 41: G. 20, 3: H. 43, 3: C. 13, I., 3.—omnium—contentiōne, *with all its might*; what is the literal translation? for the Abl. contentiōne, see 54.—Si, (*to see*) whether.—posset, see 151.—repertas, from re-perio; see 121.—tollērem, see 143 and A. & G. 310, *a*; A. & S. 477, *e*: B. 305, *third clause*: G. 594, 2: H. 507, NOTE 7: C. 219; 250.—quaē, see 34.—se, see 53.—desp̄erent, see note on irritent, Fable 11.

13. quomōdo, (*to see*) by what means.—sibi, see A. & G. 227, *c*: A. & S. 378: B. 239: B. & M. 836: G. 347: H. 385, 1: C. 160.—cavērent.

see **151.** — *aliis*, see LN. LXXXV., Note 1 and **122.** — *placuit*, what is its subject? — *annecteretur*, see A. & G. 332, *a*: A. & S. 494, *a*: B. **301**, RULE LXII.: B. & M. **1222**: G. **558**: H. **501**, I., 1: C. **208**. — *sic posse*; this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as *they thought, they said*. — *quaereretur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6; what is the subject of *quaereretur*? — *suadendo*, see **153**. — *plurimos*, see **85** and LN. LXXXV., Note 9.

14. *inhaeserat*, from *inhaereo*. — *mercède*, see **146**. — *extrahat*, see **136**. — *hoc*, what was *this* that the crane accomplished? — *postularet*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *num*, what answer is implied? See LN. LXI., Note 1. — *merces*, see **64**. — *videtur*, what is its subject? — *fauciibus*, how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See GEN. VY.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. *Janicūlo*, *the Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; *the seven hills* are on the east side; these are *the Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, Aventine, Coelian, Esquiline, and Viminal*. — *eam Saturniam*, see **58**. — *Itālos*, *agricultūram*, see **71**. — *primus* — *docuit*, *was the first who taught*; see A. & G. **191**: A. & S. **557 h**: B. **271**, REMARK: B. & M. **663**: G. **324**, 7: H. **442**, Note: C. **113**, 6, note 1.

2. *in regionibus*; what country is meant? — *sub, in the reign of*. — *Troja, Troy* is said to have been destroyed in b. c. 1184. — *hinc, from this place*, i. e. from Troy. — *Aenēae, Anchisae*, how declined? See A. & G. **37**: A. & S. **94**: B. **125**: B. & M. **52**: G. **72**: H. **50**: C. **20**. — *quibus*, see **132**. — *Lavinium* was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles from the coast.

3. *Aenēae*, see note on *Aenēae* in preceding section. — *transtulit*, see **123**. — *Albam Longam, Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking the Alban Lake. — *secūtus est, succeeded*. — *genitus erat*, from *gigno*. — *ad Romam condītam, until the founding of Rome*; what is the literal translation? — *Albae*, see **106**.

4. *Jove*, see **133** and A. & G. **60**, *b*, page 32: A. & S. **111**, (3): B. **138**: B. & M. **123**: H. **66**, 3: C. 31. — *tonāret*, see **128** and note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *multo*, see **144**. — *tonitru*, what case? why? — *ictus, sc. est*. — *Albānum Lacum*, see note on *Albam Longam* in section 3.

5. *minor natu = junior*; for *natu*, see **124**. — *vellet*, see **125** and **151**. *reliquisset*, see LN. LXXXIX., Note 5.

6. *vestalem virginem*, *a vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — *licet*, what is its subject? — *viro nubere*, *to marry*; for *viro*, see 132; what does *nubere* mean? — *peperit*, from *pario*. — *hoc*, what was it that Amulius had found out?

7. *essent positi*, see A. & G. 326: A. & S. 510 (2): B. 302, 1: B. & M. 1251: G. 587: H. 517: C. 214, 3. — *quod*, what is its antecedent? what did *a certain Faustulus* see? — *regionis*, what *region* is meant? — *nutriendos*, *to be nourished*, modifies *pueros*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*.

8. *adolevissent*, from *adolesco*; see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *quis*, see 64. — *avus*, sc. *fuisset* and see 151. — *monte Aventino*, *Mount Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. *civibus*, see A. & G. 231, a: A. & S. 380: B. 242, REM. 3: B. & M. 820: H. 386: C. 154. — *inter*, *in the midst of*. — *ipso*, *very*. — *spectantes*, translate by a relative clause.

10. *Romae*, see 67. — *in incidérunt*, *they came unexpectedly upon*. — *quod*, see note on *quod*, Fable 9. — *gerérent*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5. — *et ea*, *these also*, i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. *Montem Tarpéium*, *the Tarpeian mount*; probably the Capitoline hill. — *forum Románum*, *the Roman Forum*, an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, *the Populus Romanus*, met to transact business. — *media*, *midst of*. — *raptæ*, sc. *mulières*. — *hinc* — *hinc*, *here* — *there*. — *utrique*, who are meant? — *icit*, compare the English expression, *strike a bargain*; the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of *ico*.

12. *quum* — *tum*, *both* — *and*. — *raptarum*, sc. *muliérum*. — *inter*, *in the midst of*. — *ortam*, *which had arisen*. — *oculis*, see 67. — *hinc*, i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. — *alii* — *alii*, *some* — *others*. — *interfectum*, sc. *esse*. — *sublatum esse* from *tollo*.

13. *quo*, what is its antecedent? — *Curiibus*, see 106. — *jussu*, see 79. *facere*, what is its object? — *morbo decessit*, i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with *decessit* supply *de vita*.

14. *praestitērat*, what does it govern? see 58. — *creātus*, see LN. LXIII. and EXAMPLES. — *Horatiōrum*. The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived; this gave the victory to the Romans. — *Metti Fufēti*, see 17; for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed

to Rome and located on the Caelian Hill ; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs*. — *annis* expresses *duration of time* ; what is the more usual construction ? see 93. — *arsit*, fr. *ardeo*, *ardēre*, *arsi*, *arsum*, *burn*.

15. *aequitatē*, see 124. — *avo*, see 86. — *bello*, see 54. — *ei*, see A. & G. 225, d: A. & S. 379: B. 242, REM. 3: B. & M. 859: G. 348: H. 384, II., 2: C. 152. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *obiit*, see 126 and note on *morbo decessit*, section 13.

16. *deinde*, i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — *qui* refers to *Demarāti*. — *advenienti*, sc. *ei* and see A. & G. 229: A. & S. 380: B. 242, REM. 3: B. & M. 829: H. 386, 2: C. 151. — *abstulit* from *aufēro*, *auferre*, *abstuli*, *ablātum*, *carry off*; derived from *ab away*, *off*; and *fero carry*. — *auguriōrum*, see 140.

17. *Romae*, see 106. — *commorarētur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *tutōrem*, *as guardian*; compare 58. — *pupillis*, see 67. — *gentium* modifies *senatōres* understood. — *plura*, *several*; how declined ? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11. — *ademptos*, from *adīmo*. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *Cloācas*. The main *sewer*, known as the Cloaca Maxima, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — *Capitolium*, *the Capitol*, signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — *per filios*, *at the instigation of the sons*; they hired assassins to murder him : *ā filiis* would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — *quibus*, see note on *ei*, section 16.

18. *genitus*, from *gigno*. — *captiva*, see 25. — *domo*, how declined ? See 97. — *conjūgi*, see 132 and Ex. 1. — *educāret*, see 136.

19. *domus*; this stood on the Palatine. — *regem* — *obediret*; change this to the Direct Discourse ; see 152. — *eum* refers to *regem*. — *coepit*, see 127. — *montes* — *adjunxit*. The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — *milia*, how declined ? see 108. — *civium*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. *scelēre*, see 79. — *filiae*, see 25. — *curiae*. The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — *domūm*, see 105 ; how declined ? — *prima*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *regem*, *as king*; compare 58.

21. *cognōmen*, i. e. *Superbus*, *the Proud*. — *moribūs*, see 79. — *bello*, see 111. — *plures*, how declined ? see note on *plura*, section 17. — *populōrum*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *Templum*. This *temple* had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus ; see section 17. — *Jovis*, how declined ? see note on *Jove*, section 4. — *Lucretiae*, see 39. — *vim*, how declined ? See GEN. VY. — *ut* — *ulciscerentur*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. *in*, *for*. — *conjurārunt*, see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — *populo*, see 132. — *ei*, *against him*; see 39. — *civitātem* = *urbem*. — *Ardea* was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in **SMALL CAPITALS** are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xii.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

āb, **ā**, prep. w. abl. *from, away from; by: on the side of.*

ab-dūco, **dūcērē**, **duxī**, **ductūm** (*ab away, duco lead*), *lead away*. ABDUCT, ABDUCTION.

ab-jīcio, **jīcērē**, **jēcī**, **jectūm** (*ab away, down; jacio cast*), *cast away or down*. ABJECT.

abs-tīneo, **tīnērē**, **tīnuī**, **tentūm** (*ab(s) from, teneo keep*), *keep from*, ABSTAIN. ABSTINENCE.

ab-sūm, **essē**, **fui** (*ab away, sum be*) *be away, be ABSENT, be distant.*

āc. See *atquē*.

Accā, **ae**, f., *Acca Lārentia*, the wife of Faustulus.

ac-cēdo, **cēdērē**, **cessī**, **cessūm** (*ad towards, cedo go*), *go towards, draw near, approach; assault*. ACCEDE, ACCESSION. **ac-cīdo**, **cīdērē**, **cīdī** (*ad upon, cado fall*), *fall upon, befall, happen*. ACCIDENT.

ac-cīpio, **cīpērē**, **cēpī**, **ceptūm** (*ad to one's self, capio take*), *receive*, ACCEPT, take.

ac-curro, **currērē**, **cūcurrī** and **currī**, **cursūm** (*ad to, curro run*), *run to, hasten to*.

accūso, **ārē**, **āvī**, **atūm** (*ad to, causa a lawsuit*), ACCUSE, blame, censure. ACCUSATION.

ācēr, **ācrīs**, **ācrē**, *sharp*. ACRID.

ăcerbūs, ă, ūm, sour. ACERBITY. ăciēs, ăciēi, f., edge; line, line of battle; army in battle-array. See agmen.

ăcrītēr, ăcriūs, ăcerrīmē, adv. (acer sharp), sharply, fiercely, violently.

ăd, prep. w. acc. to, towards; for; near; w. numerals, about; w. names of towns, towards, in or into the vicinity of.

ăd-ămo, ărē, ăvī, ătūm (ad denoting a beginning, amo love), begin to love, acquire a liking for.

ad-do, dērē, dīdī, dītūm (ad to, beside; do put), ADD.

ad-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (ad to, duco lead), lead to, lead; influence.

ăd-eo, ărē, ii, ătūm (ad to, eo go), go to. See 126.

ăd-ĭmo, ămērē, ămī, emptūm (ad to one's self, emo take), take away.

ădītūs, ūs, m. (adeo go to), approach, access.

ad-jungo, jungērē, junxī, junc-tūm (ad to, jungo join), join to, join.

ad-mīnistro, ărē, ăvī, ătūm (ad without additional force, ministro serve), ADMINISTER, manage. ADMINISTRATION, ADMINISTRATOR.

ad-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm (ad to, mitto let go), allow, ADMIT; give the reins to; equo admissō, at full speed. ADMISSION.

ad-mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm (ad w. no perceptible additional force, moneo admonish), ADMONISH, warn. ADMONITION.

ădōlesco, adōlescērē, ădōlēvī, ădultūm (adoleo cause to grow up), grow, increase, grow up. ADULT.

ad-sūm, ad-essē, af-fuī (ad near, sum be), be near, be present: assist.

ad-vēnio, venīrē, vēnī, ventūm (ad to, venio come), come to, arrive, come. ADVENTURE.

adventūs, ūs, m. (advenio come to), arrival, approach. ADVENT.

adversūs and adversūm, prep. w. acc. towards, against.

ad-vertō, vertērē, vertī, ver-sūm (ad towards, verto turn), turn towards; id anīnum advertēre, to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it. ADVERT.

aedifīciūm, ī, n. (aedifico build), building, EDIFICE.

aedifīco, ărē, ăvī, ătūm (aedes building for habitation, facio make), build. EDIFY, EDIFICATION.

Aeduī, ărūm, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul.

aegēr, aegrā, aegrūm, sick.

Aenēas, ae, m., a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchīses.

aequītās, ătīs, f. (aequus fair, equitable), EQUITY, justice, moderation.

aequūs, ā, ūm, even, level; EQUAL; like; fair, equitable.

aestās, ātīs, f., summer.

aetās, ātīs, f., age.

af-féro, **af-ferrē**, **at-tūlī**, **al-lātūm** (ad to, fero bring), bring to, carry to; offer; carry.

af-ficio, **fīcērē**, **fēcī**, **fectūm** (ad to, facio do), AFFECT, influence; **magnō dolōre affīci**, to be very grievously affected.

āgēr, **agrī**, m., field, land; country, territory.

aggēr, **aggērīs**, m., mound; materials for a mound.

ag-grēdīor, **grēdī**, **gressūs sūm** (ad to, gradior go), go to, approach; go against, attack. AGGRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.

agmēn, **agmīnīs**, n. (ago put in motion), army on the march, line of march; [acies, army in battle array; exercitus, a disciplined army]; **agmen novissīmū**, the rear; **prīmū** agmen, the van.

ag-nosco, **noscērē**, **nōvī**, **nītūm** (ad denoting reference, (g)nosco know), recognize; know.

āgo, **āgērē**, **ēgī**, **actūm**, put in motion; lead, drive, conduct; act, do, perform. ACTION, AGENT.

agricultūrā, ae, f. (ager field, colo cultivate), AGRICULTURE.

ālācēr, **ālacrīs**, **ālacrē**, lively, cheerful; eager, fierce.

ālacrītās, **ātīs**, f. (alacer lively), liveliness, eagerness, zeal. ALACRITY.

Albā or **Albā Longā**, the mother city of Rome, built by Ascanius.

Albānūs, ī, m., an *Alban*, an inhabitant of Alba.

alīquandō, adv. (aliquis some one), at some time, once, formerly.

alīquiūs, indef. pron. [see 116, a], some one, somebody, something, some; any one, anybody, anything, any.

āliūs, **āliā**, **āliūd** [see 24], other, another.

Allobrōgēs, um, m. pl., a people in the southeastern part of Gaul.

al-lōquor, **lōquī**, **lōcūtūs sūm** (ad to, loquor speak), speak to, address.

ālo, **ālērē**, **āluī**, **ālītūm** or **al-tūm**, nourish, feed, support.

Alpēs, **Alpiūm**, f. pl. the ALPS. **altē**, **altiūs**, **altissīmē** (altus high, low), on high, highly; low, lowly.

altēr, **altērā**, **altērūm** [see 24], one of two, the other, the second; altēr — altēr, the one — the other.

altītūdo, **altītūdīnīs**, f. (altus high, deep), height; depth; ALTITUDE.

altūs, ā, ūm (alo nourish), high, lofty; deep.

āmicītiā, ae, f. (amicus friendly), friendship.

āmicūs, ā, ūm (amo love), loving, friendly; **āmicūz**, ī, m. friend. AMICABLE.

- ā-mitto**, mittērē, mīsī, missūm (ab away, mitto let go), lose.
- amplio**, ārē, āvī, ātūm (amplus of large extent), enlarge.
- ampliūs**, adv. more, farther.
- Amuliūs**, ī, m., son of Silvius Procas and brother of Numitor.
- ān**, adv. or.
- Anchīsēs**, ae, m., a Trojan, the father of Aenēas.
- Ancūs Marciūs**, ī, m., the fourth king of Rome.
- angustiae**, ārūm, f. pl. (angustus narrow), narrow pass, defile; difficulty.
- ānīm-ad-verto**, vertērē, vertī, versūm (animus mind, adverto turn towards), notice. ANIMADVERT, ANIMADVERSION.
- ānīmāl**, **ānīmālis**, n., ANIMAL.
- ānīmūs**, ī, m., mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage. [animus denotes the human soul, including all its faculties, including mens; mens denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]
- an-necto**, nectērē, nexuī, nexūm (ad to, necto tie, fasten), tie to, fasten to. ANNEX.
- annūs**, ī, m., year. ANNUAL.
- antē**, prep. w. acc., before; adv. before, previously. ANTE in ANTECEDENT, etc.
- anteā**, adv. (ante before, ea that), before, previously.
- antiqūs**, ā, ūm (ante before), ancient, old; of long continuance. ANTIQUE, ANTIQUATED.
- ānūlūs**, ī, m., ring. ANNULAR.
- Ap.**, abbreviation of *Appius*, a Roman prænomen.
- āpertūs**, ā, ūm (aperio uncover), uncovered, unprotected.
- ap-pello**, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ad to, pello bring one's self to a person), address; name, call. APPEAL, APPELLATION.
- ap-prōpinquo**, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ad to, propinquo draw near), draw near to, approach.
- āpūd**, prep. w. acc., at, near, in presence of, among.
- āquā**, ae, f., water. AQUEDUCT.
- āquīlā**, ae, f., eagle.
- Aquīlēiā**, ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.
- Aquitāni**, īrūm, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.
- Aquitāniā**, ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.
- Arār**, **Arārīs**, acc. **Arārīm**, m., the Saône [pronounced Sône], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.
- arcesso**, arcessērē, arcessivī, arcessitūm, invite, summon.
- arceo**, arcērē, arcui, drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain.
- Ardea**, ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutūli.
- armā**, īrūm, n. pl., ARMS, weapons.
- armillā**, ae, f., bracelet or ring, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.
- Ariovistus**, ī, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.

ar-ripiō, rīpērē, rīpui, reptūm (ad upon, *rapio* seize), *seize upon.*

arrōgantiā, ae, f. (*arrogans assuming*), *haughtiness, insolence, ARROGANCE.*

Arvernī, ūrūm, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.

arx, arcīs, f., *citadel, fortress.*

Ascaniūs, ī, m., son of Aeneas.

Asia, ae, f., ASIA.

ăsīnūs, ī, in, an ass.

as-sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtūs sūm (ad with no perceptible additional force, *sequor follow*), *follow; overtake; obtain.*

ăsylūm, ī, n. ASYLUm.

ăt, conj. but.

at-tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm (ad against, *tango touch*), *touch against, border upon; touch, reach.*

atquē, āc, conj. (ad in addition, que and), *and also, and.*

auctōrītās, ātīs, f. (*auctor producer*), AUTHORITY, influence.

audāciā, ae, f. (*audax bold*), *boldness, AUDACITY.*

audācītēr or audactēr, audāciūs, audācissimē, adv. (*audax bold*), *boldly, courageously.*

audax, gén. audācīs (*audeo dare*), *bold, daring, AUDACIOUS.*

audeo, audērē, ausūs sūm [see Ln. XCII, NOTE 31], *dare, venture.*

audio, īrē, īvī, ītūm, hear. AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.

au-fūgio, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgītūm (ab away. *fugio flee*), *flee away, escape; flee.*

augeo, augērē, auxī, auctūm, increase, AUGMENT.

augūrium, ī, n. (*auguror fr. augur diviner*), AUGURY, divination.

aureūs, ā, ūm (*aurum gold*), *golden.*

aurīgā, ae, m. (*aurea bridle, ago manage*), charioteer.

aurīs, aurīs, f. ear. AURI-CULAR.

aurūm, ī, n., gold.

aut, conj. or; aut — aut, either — or.

autēm, conj., but, yet, moreover.

auxīlīum, ī, n. (*augeo increase*), help, aid; pl. AUXILIARIES.

Aventīnūs, ī, m., the Aventine.

aversūs, ā, ūm (*averto turn away*), turned away; *aversus hostis, a retreating enemy.*

ā-vertō, vertērē, vertī, versūm (ab away, *verto turn*), turn away, turn aside, AVERT. AVERSION.

ăvūs, ī, m., grandfather.

B.

barbārūs, ā, ūm, foreign; uncivilized; savage, rude, BARBAROUS. BARBARIAN.

beātūs, ā, ūm (*beo bless*), happy. BEATIFIC.

Belgae, īrūm, m. pl., a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul.

bellīcōsūs, ā, ūm, *warlike.*
bello, ārē, āvī, atūm (*bellum war*), *carry on war.*
bellūm ī, n., *war.*
bēnē, adv., *well, finely.*
bēnēfīcium, ī, n., *kindness, BENEFIT.* **BENEFICIAL.**
bēnignē, adv. (*benignus kind*), *kindly; BENIGNLY.* **BENIGN, BENIGNANT.**
bestiā, ae, f., *BEAST.*
Bibractē, īs, n., the chief town of the Aedui.
biennium, ī, n. (*bis twice, annus year*), *two years.* **BIENNIAL.**
Bōiī, īrūm, m. pl., *the Boii* [pronounced *Bō-yī*], a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany.
bōnūs, ā, ūm, *good, friendly;* bōnūm, ī, n. *a good thing, an advantage;* bōnā, īrūm, n. pl., *goods, an estate.*
bōs, bōvīz, m. and f., *ox, cow.*
brēvīs, brēvē, *short, BRIEF.*
Brūtūs, ī, m. (*brutus stupiū*), L. Junius Brutus, the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion.

C.

C., abbreviation of **Gāiūs** [pronounced *Gā-yus*], a Roman praenomen.
caedēs, caedīs, f. (*caedo kill*), *murder, slaughter, carnage.*
caedo, caedērē, cēcīdī, cae-sūm, *cut, cut down; kill, mur-*

der. -CIDE in **PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.**
Caesār, Caesārīs, m., *Caius Julius Caesar*, a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.
Cāiūs Vālēriūs Prociullus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.
cālāmītās, ātīs, f., *CALAMITY, disaster, misfortune.*
campūs, ī, m., *plain, field;* **Campus**, *the Campus Martius*, a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.
cānīs, cānīs, m. and f., *dog.*
cāpio, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm, *take, CAPTURE.*
Cāpītōliūm, ī, n. (*caput head*), *THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome;* *the Capitoline hill*, including both temple and citadel.
caprā, ae, f., *a she-goat.*
captīvūs, ā, ūm (*capio capture*), *CAPTIVE;* **captīvūs**, ī, m., *a captive, a prisoner.*
cāpūt, cāpītīs, n., *head.* OC-CIPUT.
carcēr, carcērīs, m., *prison.* INCARCER-ATE.
cāreō, cārērē, cāruī, cārītūm *be without, lack.*
carpentūm, ī, n., *chariot.*
carrūs, ī, m., *CART, wagon.*
cārūs, ā, ūm, *dear, beloved.*
Cassiūs, ī, m., a Roman name.

castellūm, ī, n. (*castrum a fortified place*), CASTLE, fort, stronghold.

Casticūs, ī, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castră, ūrūm, n. pl., soldiers' huts, camp.

causă, ae, f., CAUSE, reason, motive; **causā**, for the sake of, when following a Genitive; **causam dicēre**, to plead one's cause.

căveo, căvērĕ, căvī, cautūm, be on one's guard. CAUTIOUS. **cĕlĕr, cĕlĕris, cĕlĕrĕ** (cello im-pel), swift, speedy. CELERITY. **cĕlĕritĕr, cĕlĕriūs, cĕlĕrrimē**, adv. (celer swift), swiftly, quickly, immediately.

cĕlo, ārĕ, āvī, ātūm, conceal, hide.

censūs, ūs, m. (*censeo assess, register*), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, ūm, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centūm, num. adj. indecl., hundred.

certāmĕn, certāmīnīs, n. (*certo contend*), contest; battle.

certūs, ā, ūm (*cerno determine*), CERTAIN, sure; **Caesarēm certiōrem facēre**, to inform Caesar.

cētērī, ae, ā, adj. pl., the rest.

cibūs, ī, m., food.

cingo, cingērĕ, cinxī, cinctūm, surround, encircle. CINCTURE.

circitĕr, adv. (*circus circle*), about, near.

circūm, prep. w. acc. (circus circle), around; near, in the environs of. CIRCUM- is a prefix in many English words; e. g. CIRCUM-FERENCE, CIRCUM-NAVIGATE.

circum-do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătūm (*circum around, do put*), put around, surround.

circum-věnio, věnirĕ, věnī, ventūm (*circum around, věnio come*), come around, surround; CIRCUMVENT.

citērior, citēriūs [see 85], hither.

citrā, prep. w. acc., this side of.

civīs, civīs, m. and f., citizen. CIVIL.

civītās, ātīs, f. (*civis citizen*), a body of citizens, a state; citizenship.

clārūs, ā, ūm, CLEAR; famous.

claudio, claudērĕ, clausī, clau-sūm, close, enclose, shut; agmen **claudēre**, to bring up the rear. IN-CLUDE, EX-CLUDE.

cliens, clientīs, m. and f., (clu-ens fr. clueo hear), CLIENT, vassal.

clīpeūs or clýpeūs, ī, m., shield.

cloācă, ae, f., drain, sewer; **Clo-āca maxīma**, the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus.

coepī, coepissē [see 127], have begun, began.

cōgīto, ārĕ, āvī, ātūm (cum denoting completeness, agito weigh in the mind), consider, reflect upon. COGITATE.

cognōmēn, cognōmīn̄s, n. (cum denoting *similarity*, (g)nomen name), a surname.

co-gnosco, gnoscēr̄e, gnōvī, gnītūm (cum denoting *completeness*, (g)nosco know), know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover. COGNITION.

cōgo, cōgēr̄e, coēgī, coactūm (cum together, ago drive), drive or lead together, collect; compel. COGENT.

cohors, cohortīs, f., COHORT, the tenth part of a legion.

co-hortor, ār̄i, ātūs sūm (cum intensive, hortor urge), exhort, encourage.

Collātinūs, ī, m., cognomen of L. Tarquinius.

collīs, collīs, m., a hill.

col-lōco, ār̄e, āvī, ātūm (cum denoting *completeness*, loco place), lay, put, place; nuptum — collocāre, to give in marriage. COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.

collōquiūm, ī, n. (colloquor speak together), conference, interview. COLLOQUY.

col-lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtūs sūm (cum with, loquor speak), speak with, hold a conference.

collūm, ī, n., neck.

cōlo, cōlēr̄e, cōluī, cultūm, dwell; till, CULTIVATE; honor.

com-būro, būr̄e, bussī, bustūm (cum denoting *completeness*, (b)uro burn), burn up. COMBUSTION.

comītūm, ī, n. (cum together, eo go), the comitium, a place where the Romāns assembled to vote.

commeātūs, ūs, m. (commeo come and go), supplies, provisions.

com-mēmōro, ār̄e, āvī, ātūm (cum intensive, memoro remind of), call to mind; relate. COMMEMORATION.

com-meo, ār̄e, āvī, ātūm (cum denoting frequency, meo go), come and go, resort; ad Belgas commeāre, to visit the Belgae.

com-mitto, mittēr̄e, mīsī, mis-sūm (cum together, mitto cause to go), join; begin; COMMIT. COMMISSION.

commōdē, adv. (commodus advantageous), advantageously, filly, conveniently; satis commōde, conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.

commōdūs, ā, ūm (cum denoting completeness, modus measure), advantageous, suitable, fit. COMMODIOUS.

com-mōror, ār̄i, ātūs sūm (cum denoting completeness, moror tarry), stop; reside, stay at; remain.

com-mōveo, mōvēr̄e, mōvī, mōtūm (cum intensive, moveo move), move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce. COMMO- TION.

com-mūnio, mūnīr̄e, mūnīvī and mūniī, mūnītūm (cum

denoting *completeness*, *munio fortify*), *fortify on all sides*.

commūnīs, commūnē (*cum together, munis serving*), *COMMON*.

com-pāro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*cum intensive, paro prepare*), *prepare with zeal, make ready*.

com-pērio, pērīrē, pērī, per-tūm, *learn, discover*.

com-plexor, plectī, plexūs sūm (*cum with, plector entwine one's self*), *embrace*.

complūrēs, complūrā (*rarely complūriā*), gen. *complūriūm*, adj. pl. (*cum together, plures several*), *several together, very many*.

com-porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*cum together, porto bring*), *bring together, collect. COMPORT*.

cōnātūm, ī, n. (*conor to attempt*), *an attempt*.

con-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (*cum denoting completeness, cedo yield*), *grant; CONCEDE. CONCESSION*.

concīlio, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*cōcilium a calling together*), *bring together; win, CONCILIATE*.

concīlīum, ī, n. (*cum together, calo call*), *COUNCIL, assembly*.

concordiā, ae, f. (*concors fr. cum denoting similarity, cor heart*), *CONCORD, harmony*.

con-curro, currērē, cūcurrī and currī, cursūm (*cum together, curro run*), *rush together; hasten. CONCURRENT*.

condītio, condītiōnīs, f. (*condō put together*), *CONDITION*.

condō, condērē, condīdī, condītūm (*cum together, do put*), *found, build*.

con-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, duc-tūm (*cum together, duco lead*), *lead together, collect; hire; CONDUCE*.

con-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, col-lātūm (*cum together, fero bring*), *bring together, collect; put off; CONFER; se conferre, to betake one's self. CONFERENCE, COL-LATE, COLLATION*.

con-fīcio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*cum denoting completeness, fācio make*), *execute, accomplish, finish. CONFECTION*.

con-firmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*cum denoting completeness, firmus firm*), *establish, strengthen, CONFIRM; encourage; assert. CONFIRMATION*.

con-jīcio, jīcērē, jēcī, jectūm (*cum intensive, jacio throw*), *hurl. CONJECTURE*.

conjūrātio, conjūratiōnīs, f. (*conjūro swear together*), *conspiracy*.

con-jūro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*cum together, juro swear*), *swear together; conspire. CONJURE*.

conjux, conjūgīs, m. and f. (*conjungo fr. cum together, jungo join*), *spouse, husband, wife*.

cōnor, ārī, ātūs sūm, attempt, try. CONATIVE.

consciūs, ā, ūm (*cum with, scio know*), CONSCIOUS.

con-sensūs, ūs, m. (*consentio think together*), AGREEMENT, CONSENT.

con-sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtūs sūm (*cum denoting completeness, sequor follow*), FOLLOW AFTER, FOLLOW; GAIN: obtain. CONSEQUENT.

con-sēro, sērērē, sēruī, sertūm (*cum together, sero join*), JOIN TOGETHER, JOIN; PUGNAM CONSERERE, TO JOIN BATTLE, TO FIGHT.

Considiūs, ī, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

con-sido, sidērē, sēdī, sessūm (*cum together, sido sit down*), SIT DOWN TOGETHER, ENCAMP.

consiliūm, ī, n., DELIBERATION, COUNSEL, PLAN, DESIGN.

con-sisto, sistērē, stītī, stītūm (*cum denoting completeness, sisto place one's self*), TAKE A STAND; KEEP A POSITION; HALT. CONSIST, CONSISTENT.

con-sōlor, ārī, ātūs sūm (*cum intensive, solor comfort*), COMFORT GREATLY, CONSOLE; ENCOURAGE, CHEER.

conspectūs, ūs, m. (*conspicio look at*), SIGHT, VIEW, PRESENCE.

con-spīcio, spīcērē, spexī, spec-tūm (*cum denoting completeness, specio look*), BEHOLD, SEE.

conspīcor, ārī, ātūs sūm (*conspicio*), BEHOLD, SEE.

constantiā, ae, f. (*constans standing firm*), FIRMNESS, STEADFASTNESS, CONSTANCY.

con-stītuo, stītuērē, stītuī, stī-

tūtūm (*cum denoting completeness, statuo cause to stand*), RESOLVE, DETERMINE; ESTABLISH, STATION.

CONSTITUTE, CONSTITUENT.

consuesco, consuescērē, consuēvī, consuētūm, BECOME ACCUSTOMED, BE WONT.

consūl, consūlis, m. (*akin to consulo consult*), CONSUL; ONE OF THE TWO CHIEF MAGISTRATES AT ROME, CHOSEN ANNUALLY.

con-sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsī, sumptūm (*cum denoting completeness, sumo take*), CONSUME, WASTE, DESTROY. CONSUMPTION.

con-temno, temnērē, tempsī, temptūm, DESPISE; CONTEMN. CONTEMPT.

con-tendo, tendērē, tendī, tentūm (*cum denoting completeness, tendo stretch*), HASTEN, MARCH IN HASTE; CONTEND, DISPUTE, FIGHT; W. INF. PROCEED, SET OUT EAGERLY.

contentio, contentiōnīs, f. (*con-tendo contend*), CONTENTION, STRIFE.

con-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (*cum together, teneo hold*), HOLD TOGETHER; ENCOMPASS, HEM IN, BOUND; OCCUPY, RESTRAIN. CONTENT, CONTINENT.

contīnenrē, adv. (*contīnens hanging together*), CONTINUALLY, WITHOUT CESSION.

con-tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm (*cum denoting completeness, tango touch*), TOUCH ON ALL SIDES; TOUCH, BORDER UPON. CONTACT.

contrā, prep. w. acc., against.

contūmēliā, ae, f. (*cum intensive, tumeo swell*), *insult, abuse; disgrace.* CONTUMELY.

con-vălesco, vălescĕrĕ, văluī (*cum denoting completeness, valesco grow strong*), *regain health, recover.* CONVALESCENT.

con-vĕnio, vĕnirĕ, vĕnī, vĕn-tūm (*cum together, venio come*), *come together, assemble;* CONVENE. CONVENTION.

conventūs, ūs, m. (*convenio come together*), *court;* **conven-tum agĕre, to hold a court.**

con-vertō, vertĕrĕ, vertī, ver-sūm (*cum denoting completeness, verto turn*), *turn about, change; in fugam convertĕre, to put to flight.* CONVERT, CONVERSION.

con-vōcō, ārĕ, āvī, ātūm (*cum together, voco call*), *call together, summon,* CONVOKE. CONVOCATION.

cōpiă, ae, f. (*cum denoting completeness, ops means of any kind*), *plenty, abundance, supply; number;* pl., *forces, troops; riches.*

cōpiōsūs, ā, ūm (*copia plenty, osus full of*), *wealthy, well-supplied;* COPIOUS.

cōrām, prep. w. abl., *in the presence of; before:* adv., openly.

Cōrinthūs, ī, f., *Corinth*, a city in Greece.

corpūs, corpōrīs, n., body; CORPSE.

cornū, ūs, n., horn; wing, flank of an army.

cor-rōdō, rōdĕrĕ, rōsī, rōsūm (*cum denoting completeness, rodo gnaw*), *gnaw to pieces, gnaw;* CORRODE.

Crassus, M. Licinius Crassus, a celebrated Roman.

crēmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātūm, burn. CREMATION.

creo, ārĕ, āvī, ātūm, CREATE, elect, choose, appoint. CREATION.

crūs, crūrīs, n., leg.

cultūs, ūs, m. (*colo cultivate*), CULTURE, CIVILIZATION.

cūm, prep. w. abl., *with, together with.*

cūpīdītās, ātīs, f. (*cupidus desirous*), *desire, wish, longing; eagerness, enthusiasm;* CUPIDITY.

cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, (*cupio desire*), *desirous, fond.*

cūpio, cūpērĕ, cūpīvī and cūpīi, cupītūm, desire.

cūr, interrog. adv., why? wherefore?

cūrā, ae, f. (*quaero seek*), care.

Cūrēs, Cūriūm, f. pl., chief town of the Sabines.

cūriā, ae, f., curia or ward; senate-house.

Curiātīi, īrūm, m. pl., the name of an Alban tribe. Three brothers belonging to this tribe fought with the Horatii.

cūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātūm (*cura care*), *care for, attend to, cause something to be done.* CURATE.

custōs, custōdīs, m. and f., guard, watch. CUSTODIAN.

D.

- damno, ārē, āvī, atum (damnum *penalty*), CONDEMN.
- dē, prep. w. abl., *down from, from; of; about, concerning; for.*
- deā, ae, f. [see 11], goddess.
- dēbeo, ērē, uī, ītūm (de *from, habeo have*), owe.
- dē-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (de *away, cedo go*), go away, depart, retire.
- dē-certo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de *intensive, certo contend*), fight, contend.
- dēcīmūs, ā, ūm (decem *ten*), tenth.
- dē-cīpīo, cīpērē, cēpī, ceptūm (de *intensive, capio ensnare*), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.
- declāro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, show, DECLARE.
- dē-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (de *down, away, duco lead*), lead down or away, withdraw, lead. DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.
- dē-fatīgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de denoting *completeness, fatigo weary*), weary completely, fatigue.
- dē-fendo, fendērē, fendi, fensūm, DEFEND.
- dēformītās, ātīs, f., DEFORMITY, ugliness.
- deinde, adv., then, after that.
- dē-jīcio, jīcērē, jēcī, jectūm (de *down, jacio throw*), throw or cast down. DEJECTION.
- dēlectūs, ā, ūm (deligo choose), chosen.

- dēleo, dēlērē, dēlēvī, dēlētūm destroy. DELETERIOUS.
- dē-libērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de denoting *completeness, libro weigh in one's mind*), weigh well in mind, DELIBERATE. DELIBERATION.
- dē-līgo, līgērē, lēgī, lectūm (de apart, lego gather), select, choose.
- Dēmārātūs, ī, m., a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.
- dē-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm (de *down, mitto let go*), let go down; capīte demisso, with bowed head.
- dē-monstro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de intensive, monstro show), point out, show, DEMONSTRATE; declare. DEMONSTRATION.
- dēnī, ae, ā, num. adj. pl., ten each.
- dēnīquē, adv., at last, finally.
- dens, dentīs, m., tooth. DENTAL.
- dē-pōno, pōnērē, pōsūi, pōsītūm (de *down, pono put*), put down, lay aside, get rid of. DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.
- de-scēndo, scēndērē, scēndī, scensūm (de *down, scando go*), DESCEND.
- de-scribō, scribērē, scripsi, scriptūm, DESCRIBE; divide. DESCRIPTION.
- dē-signō, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de intensive, signo mark), DESIGNATE, describe, mean.
- de-spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de denoting *negation, spero hope*) despair. DESPERATION.
- de-stītuo, stītuērē, stītūi, stītū-

tūm (de *away*, statuo *put*), *forsake, abandon.* DESTITUTE, DESTITUTION.

dē-sūm, **de-essē**, **dē-fuī** (de *away*, sum *be*), *be wanting.*

dētēriōr, **dētēriūs** [see 85], *worse.*

dētrimentūm, ī, n. (detero fr. de *away*, tero *rub*), *loss; damage, injury; DETRIMENT.* DETERIMENTAL.

deūs, ī, m. [see 20], *god; DEITY.*

dē-veho, *vehērē, vexī, vectūm* (de *away*, *veho carry*), *carry away, bring.*

dē-vōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de *down*, *voro swallow*), *DEVOUR, eat up.*

dextēr, **dextrā**, **dextrūm**, *right; dextrā* (sc. manu *hand*), *on the right.* DEXTEROUS.

dico, **dicērē**, **dixī**, **dictūm**, *say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name; causam dicēre, to plead one's cause.* DICTUM.

diēs, **diēi**, m., *day.*

dif-fēro, **dif-ferrē**, **dis-tūlī**, **dī-lātūm** (dis *in different directions*, *fero carry*), *carry different ways; put off;* DIFFER.

difficilīs, ē (dis *negative, facilis easy*), *DIFFICULT; impracticable.*

dignitās, ātīs, f. (*dignus worthy*), *DIGNITY, rank; honor, office.*

dignūs, ā, ūm, *worthy.* DIGNIFY. **dī-mitto**, *mittērē, misī, missūm* (dis *hither and thither, mitto send*), DISMISS.

dī-ruo, *ruērē, ruī, rūtūm* (dis *asunder, ruo hurl down*), *destroy; overthrow; raze.*

dīs, m. and f.; **dītē**, n.; gen. **dītīs** [**dītiōr**, **dītissīmūs**], *rich.*

dis-cēdo, *cēdērē, cessī, cessūm* (dis *away, cedo go*), *go away, depart, leave.*

dissīdiūm, ī, n. (dissideo fr. dis *apart, sedeo sit*), *dissension.*

dis-trībuo, *trībuērē, trībuī, trī-būtūm* (dis *among several, tribuo give*), *DISTRIBUTE, divide.*

dītio, **dītīōnīs**, f., *dominion, power.* **dīū**, **dīūtiūs**, **dīūtissīmē**, adv., *a long time.*

dīvēs, gen. **dīvītīs**, adj., *rich.*

Divīco, **ōnīs**, m., *a distinguished man among the Helvetii.*

dī-vīdo, *vīdērē, vīsī, vīsūm* (dis *asunder, root vīd separate*), *DIVIDE; separate.* DIVISION.

Divitiācūs, ī, m., *a chief of the Aedui.*

dīvītiae, **ārūm**, f. pl. (*dives rich*), *riches, wealth.*

do, **dārē**, **dēdī**, **dātūm**, *give.*

dōceo, **dōcērē**, **dōcuī**, *doctūm teach, instruct; inform.* DocTOR.

dōlōr, **dōlōrīs**, m. (*doleo feel pain*), *grief, sorrow, trouble.* DOLOROUS.

dōlūs, ī, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem.*

dōmo, ārē, **dōmuī**, **dōmītūm**, *subdue, conquer.*

dōmūs, ūs and ī [see 97], *house,* **dōmī**, *at home;* **dōmūm**, *home,*

*homeward ; dōmō, from home.
DOME.*

dūbītātio, ūnīs, f. (*dubito waver
in opinion*), *doubt, hesitation.*

dūbiūs, ā, ūm, *doubtful. DUBI-*
OUS.

dūcentī, ae, ā, num. adj. pl. (*duo
two, centum hundred*), *two hun-*
dred.

dūco, **dūcērē**, **duxī**, **ductūm**,
*lead, draw ; suppose, consider ;
put off. DUCT, AQUEDUCT.*

dulcīs, **dulcē**, *sweet, pleasant.
DULCET.*

dum, conj., *while, as long as ; un-*
til.

Dumnōrix, **Dumnōrīgīs**, m., one
of the Aedui.

duō, ae, ū, num. adj. [see 108],
two.

dux, **dūcīs**, m. and f., *leader,
guide ; commander, general.*

E.

ēdūco, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*edūco
bring up a child*), *EDUCATE.
EDUCATION.*

ē-dūco, **dūcērē**, **duxī**, **ductūm**
(*ex out, duco lead*), *lead out,
lead forth. EDUCATE, EDUCUTION.*

effēmīno, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*ex
denoting change of nature, fe-
mina woman*), *enervate. EF-
FEMINATE.*

ef-fīcio, **fīcērē**, **fēcī**, **fectūm**
(*ex out, facio make*), *EFFECT,
accomplish.*

ef-fundo, **fundērē**, **fūdī**, **fūsūm**

(*ex out, fundo pour*), *pour out,
overflow. EFFUSION.*

Egēriā, ae, f., a nymph, celebrated
in Roman mythology as the wife
and instructress of Numa.

ēgō, pers. pron. [see 112], I.

ē-grēdior, **grēdī**, **gressūs sūm**
(*ex out, gradior go*), *go out,
depart. EGRESS.*

ē-lābor, **lābī**, **lapsūs sūm** (*ex
out, labor slip*), *glide away,
escape. ELAPSE.*

ē-mīneō, **mīnērē**, **mīnuī** (*ex out,
mineo jut*), *rise above ; appear.
EMINENT.*

ēmo, **ēmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**, *buy.*

ēnim, conj., *for.*

ē-nuncio, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*ex
out of a place, nuncio carry a
report*), *divulge, report.*

ēō, **irē**, **īvī**, **ītūm** [see 126], *go.*

ēō, adv., *to that place, thither,
there ; eō — quō, the — the.*

ēquēs, **ēquītīs**, m. (*equus horse,
eo go*), *rider, horseman ; cavalry-
man ; pl., cavalry.*

ēquestēr, **trīs**, **trē** (*eques horse-
man*), *of horsemen, of cavalry.*

EQUESTRIAN.

ēquītātūs, **ūs**, m. (*equīto tō be a
horseman*), *cavalry.*

ēquūs, **ī**, m., *horse.*

ē-rīpio, **rīpērē**, **rīpuī**, **reptūm**
(*ex out, rapio tear*), *tear out
or from, take from.*

ēt, conj., *and, even ; ēt — ēt, both
— and.*

ētiām, conj. (*et-jam*), *and also,
also, even.*

et-sī, conj., *even if, although.*

Etrūriā, ae,f., a country of Italy,
modern Tuscany.

ē-vertō, *vertērē*, *vertī*, *versūm* (ex out, *vertō turn*), *turn out; overturn, destroy.*

ē-vōlo, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (ex out, *volo fly*), *fly out, fly away.*

ex, ē, prep. w. abl. [see LN. IV., VY., 1], *out of, from among; from; of.*

exemplūm, *i*, n. (eximo fr. ex out, *emo take*), EXAMPLE.

ex-eo, *īrē*, *ii*, *ītūm* (ex out, *eo go*), *go out, go forth, depart; pass., be gone.*

exercitātio, *ōnīs*, f. (exercito to exercise), practice.

exercitūs, *ūs*, m. (exerceo exercise), army. See agmen

ex-īgo, *īgērē*, *ēgī*, actūm (ex out, *ago drive*), *drive out, lead out, spend; aestas exacta est, the summer is gone.* EXAC-

existīmo, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, think, suppose; believe, imagine.

existīm, *i*, n. (exo go out), destruction, ruin.

ex-ōro, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (ex effectually, *oro entreat*), move by entreaty; obtain by entreaty.

expēditūs, *ă*, *ăm* (expedio fr. ex away from, *pes foot*), uninumbered, passable. EXPEDITIOUS.

ex-plīco, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (ex out, *plico fold*), unfold, explain, spread. EXPLICATION.

explōrātōr, *ōrīs*, m. (explōro explore), spy, scout.

ex-pugno, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (ex effectually, *pugno fight*), take by assault; storm, capture.

ex-spectō, *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* (ex very much, *specto look for*), EXPECT, long for; wait. EXPECTATION.

extrā, prep. w. acc., without, beyond.

ex-trāho, *trāhērē*, *traxī*, trac-tūm (ex out, *traho draw*), draw out, EXTRACT. EXTRACTION.

extrēmūs, *ă*, *ăm* [see 85], fur-thermost, most distant, EXTREME.

ex-ūrō, *ūrērē*, *ussī*, *ustūm* (ex entirely, *uro burn*), burn up.

F.

fābūlā, ae, f. (fari to speak). story, FABLE.

fācīlē, *fāciliūs*, *fācillimē*, adv. (facilis easy), easily, readily, without difficulty.

fācīlīs, *fācīlē* (facio do, ilis denoting capability), easy, practicable. FACILE.

fācio, *fācērē*, *fēcī*, factūm, do, make; incite, furnish; iter facēre, to march, to journey.

factīo, *factiōnīs*, f. (facio take part with one), FACTION, political party.

factūm, *i*, n. (facio do), deed, act.

fācultās, *ātīs*, f. (facilis which see), ability, opportunity. FACULTY.

- fāmiliā, ae, f. (*famulus servant*), *household, FAMILY.*
- fāmiliārītās, ātīs, f. (*familiāris intimate*), *intimacy, friendship, FAMILIARITY.*
- fāmūlā, ae, f., *maid, maid-servant.*
- fāuce, abl., f. sing., *throat; fau-*
cēs, *fauciūm, f. pl., throat.*
- Faustūlūs, ī, m., the shepherd
by whom Romulus and Remus
were brought up.
- fāveo, fāvērē, fāvī, fāutūm, *fa-*
vor, show favor.
- fēlēs and fēlīs, fēlīs, f., *cat.*
FELINE.
- fēlicītēr, adv. (*felix happy*), *hap-*
pily, successfully.
- fēlix, gen. fēlicīs, adj. (*feo pro-*
duce), *happy, fortunate. FELI-*
CITOUS.
- fēmīnā, ae, f., *female, woman.*
FEMININE.
- fērē, adv., *almost, nearly.*
- fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm, *bear,*
bring, carry; endure.
- fērūs, ā, ūm, *wild, uncultivated;*
fērā, ae, f., *wild beast.*
- ferrūm, ī, n., *iron; sword.*
- festūm, ī, n., *FEAST.*
- fīdēs, fīdēī, f. (*fido trust*), *faith,*
confidence; pledge, promise;
protection. FIDELITY.
- filiā, ae, f. [see 11], *daughter.*
- filiūs, ī, m., *son.*
- finio, finirē, finīvī, fīnitūm
(*finis end*), *end, FINISH.*
- finīs, finīs, m., *end, limit, bound-*
ary; pl., territory. FINAL.
- finītīmūs, ā, ūm (*finis boun-*
dary), *neighboring; finītīmī-*
ōrūm, m. pl., neighbors.
- fīo, fiērī, factūs sūm [see 126],
be made; become; occur, hap-
pen.
- firmītēr, adv. (*firmus firm*), *firm-*
ly, securely.
- flāgīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *demand.*
- flammā, ae, f., *FLAME.*
- fleo, flērē, flēvī, flētūm, *weep.*
- flēns, gen. flēntīs, *weeping.*
- flōs, flōrīs, m., *flower. FLORAL*
- flūmēn, flūmīnīs, n. (*fluo flow*),
river.
- fluo, fluērē, fluxī, fluxūm, *flow.*
FLUENT, FLUENCY.
- fōdio, fōdērē, fōdī, fossūm,
dig. FOSSIL.
- foedūs, foedērīs, n., *league,*
treaty. FEDERAL.
- formīdo, formīdīnīs, f., *fear,*
terror.
- formōsītās, ātīs, f., *beauty.*
- fortassē, adv. (*fors chance*), *per-*
haps.
- fortē, adv. (*fors chance*), *acci-*
dentally, by chance.
- fortīs, fortē, *brave, bold, coura-*
geous, valiant; strong.
- fortītēr, fortīūs, fortissimē, adv.
(*fortis brave*), *bravely, valiantly.*
- fortūnā, ae, f., *FORTUNE.*
- fōrūm, ī, n., *market-place; FO-*
RUM; court of justice.
- fossā, ae, f. (*fodio dig*), *ditch,*
trench.
- frātēr, frātrīs, m., *brother. FRA-*
TERNAL.

frīgūs, frīgōrīs, n., *cold, frost.*
frūmentāriūs, ā, ūm (*frumentum corn*), *of corn; res frumentaria, supplies.*

frūmentūm, ī, n., *corn, grain.*
fruor, frui, fructūs sūm, *enjoy [see 104].*

fūgā, ae, f., flight.

fūgio, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgitūm, flee; escape. FUGITIVE.

fulmēn, fulmīnīs, n. (*fulgeo flash*), *thunder-bolt, lightning.*
FULMINATE.

fūnūs, fūnērīs, n., funeral procession, burial, FUNERAL.

G.

Gābiniūs, ī, m., Aulus Gabinius, a Roman consul.

Galliā, ae, f., Gaul; it embraced modern France, Belgium, that part of the Netherlands south of the Rhine, the provinces of Germany west of the Rhine, and a large part of Switzerland; all this was known as **Gallia ulterior, farther Gaul**, and as **Gallia transalpīna, Gaul across the Alps**, i. e. from Rome: the northern part of modern Italy was known as **Gallia citerior, hither Gaul**, and as **Gallia cisalpīna, Gaul this side the Alps**, i. e. towards Rome.

gallinā, ae, f., hen.

Gallūs, ī, m., a Gaul.

Garumnā, ae, f., a river of Gaul, the Garonne.

gēmīnūs, ā, ūm, double; gemīni filii, twin-sons.

gēnēr, gēnērī, m., son-in-law.

Gēnāvā, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, modern GENEVA.

gens, gentīs, f. (*gigno beget*), nation, tribe. GENTILE.

gēnūs, gēnērīs, n., birth, kind race.

Germānī, ḍrum, m. pl., THE GERMANS.

gērō, gērērē, gessī, gestūm, bear; carry; carry on, wage; pass. happen, take place.

gigno, gignērē, gēnuī, gēnītūm, beget; bear; pass., be born.

glōriā, ae, f., GLORY, renown.

glōrior, ārī, ātūs sūm (*gloria glory*), boast, GLORY.

grādūs, ūs, m. (*gradior to step*), step, stair. GRADE.

Graecūs, ā, ūm, GRECIAN, GREEK.

grātiā, ae, f. (*gratus beloved, dear*), favor; influence, popularity; GRACE: pl., thanks.

grātūlor, ārī, ātūs sūm, CONGRATULATE.

grāvīs, grāvē, heavy, burdensome; GRIEVOUS, painful, severe. GRIEF.

grāvītēr, grāviūs, grāvissimē, adv. (*gravis heavy*), heavily; grievously, severely.

grūs, gruiūs, m. and f., crane (a bird).

H.

hăbeo, ērĕ, uī, ītūm, HAVE, hold; regard, consider; deliver.

Harūdēs, ūm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany.

hastă, ae, f., spear, lance.

haud, adv., not at all, by no means.

haedūs and **hoedūs**, ī, m., kid, a young goat.

Helvētiī, ūrūm, m. pl., an ancient people occupying a large part of the country now called Switzerland.

Helvētiūs, ā, ūm, of the Helvetii.

herbīdūs, ā, ūm (herba grass), grassy.

hībernă, ūrūm, n. pl. (hiems winter), winter-quarters; [properly an adjective with **castra** understood.] HIBERNATE.

hīc, **haec**, **hōc**, this; pl., these [see 113].

hīc, adv. (hic this), here, in this place.

hiěmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātūm (hiems winter), pass the winter.

hīnc, adv. (hic this), hence, from this place.

Hispāniă, ae, f., SPAIN.

hōdiē, adv. (contracted fr. **hoc** and **die**, on this day), to-day.

hōmō, hōmīnīs, m. and f., human being, person, man. [See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.]

hōnōr, hōnōrīs, m., HONOR.

hōrā, ae, f., HOUR.

Horātiī, ūrum, m. pl., three Ro-

man brothers who fought against the Curiatii.

hortor, ārī, ātūs sūm, EXHORT, urge. HORTATORY.

hospičiūm, ī, n. (hospes guest), HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOSPITABLE.

hostīs, hostīs, m. and f., enemy, public enemy; [*inimicus* is a personal enemy.] HOSTILE.

hūc, adv. (hic this), hither, to this place.

hūmānītās, ātīs, f. (humanus of or belonging to man), HUMANITY, refinement, culture.

I.

ībī, adv. (is), there, in that place; then.

īco, īcērĕ, īcī, ictūm, strike; foedus īcēre, to ratify or make a treaty. ICTUS.

īdem, eādem, īdem (is and dem. suffix dem), the same [see 113].

īdōneūs, ā, ūm, fit, suitable.

īgitūr, conj., therefore.

ignīs, īs, m., fire.

illē, illă, illūd, that, he; pl., those.

immēritūs, ā, ūm (in negative, meritus deserving), not deserving; not deserved.

immortālīs, immortāle (in negative, mortālis mortal), IMMORTAL.

immortālītās, ātīs, f. (immortālis immortal), IMMORTALITY.

impēdīmentūm, ī, n. (impedio fr. in in the way of, pedes feet),

hindrance, pl., *baggage* of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [sarcinae are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.

im-pendeo, pendere, no perf. nor sup. (in over, pendo *hang*), overhang; IMPEND.

impērātōr, ūris, m. (impero command), commander-in-chief, general.

impērītūs, ā, ūm (in negative, peritus skilled), unskilled, inexperienced.

impēriūm, ī, n. (impero command), command; government; EMPIRE, supreme power.

impēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (in upon, paro put), give orders, order; command; rule.

impētūs, ūs, m., attack, assault.
IMPETUS.

im-plōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, beseech, entreat, IMPLORE.

im-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsī-tūm (in upon, pono place), place upon; levy upon. IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.

im-porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (in into, porto bring), bring into, IMPORT.

in, prep. w. acc and abl.; w. acc., into, to, towards, against; w. abl., in, on, upon, among.

inānīs, inānē, empty; vain, ineffectual.

incendo, incendērē, incendī, incensūm, set on fire, burn.
INCENDIARY.

inchoo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, begin. in-cido, cīdērē, cīdī (in into, cado fall), fall into or upon; chance to meet with. INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.

in-cīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (in without additional force, cito put in quick motion), instigate, encourage; INCITE.

in-cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm (in in, colo dwell), inhabit, dwell.

incolūmīs, ē, unhurt, safe.

incommōdūm, ī, (incommōdus fr. in negative, commōdus convenient), inconvenience, misfortune, defeat.

incrēdibīlīs, ē (in negative, credo believe, bilis denoting capability), INCREDIBLE; extraordinary.

incursio, ūnīs, f. (incurro fr. in into, against; curro run), attack; INCURSION.

in-cūso, ārē, āvī, ātūm (in against, causa cause), censure, blame.

in-dīco, dīcērē, dīxī, dictūm (in among, dico speak), declare, proclaim.

indignūs, ā, ūm (in negative, dignus worthy), unworthy.

indōlēs, ūs, f., disposition, nature.

in-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (in into, duco lead), lead into; INDUCE.

indulgeo, indulgērē, indulsī, indultūm, favor, show favor; INDULGE.

in-duo, duērē, duī, dūtūm, put on, dress; clothe.

īnermīs, ē (in negative, arma arms), unarmed; defenceless.

infēriōr, inferiūs, lower. INFERIOR [see 85].

in-fēro, in-ferrē, in-tūlī, il-lātūm (in into, upon, fēro bring), bring into or upon, make upon. INFER, INFERENCE.

in-fluo, fluērē, fluxī, fluxūm (in into, fluo flow), flow into, empty. INFLUENCE, INFLUX.

in-frendeo, frendērē, gnash with the teeth.

ingens, gen. ingentīs, vast, enormous, large.

in-haereo, haerērē, haesī, haesūm (in to, in; haereo stick), stick or cleave to or in.

in-hio, ārē, āvī, ātūm (in for, hio gape), gape for, desire.

īnīmīcūs, ā, ūm (in negative, amicus friendly), unfriendly, hostile; INIMICAL. See hostis.

initium, ī, n. (ineo fr. in upon, eo enter), beginning. INITIAL.

in-jīcio, jīcērē, jēcī, jectūm (in into, jacio throw), throw into; inspire, infuse. INJECT.

injūriā, ae, f. (injurius fr. in negative, jus right), INJURY, wrong; injustice, damage, insult.

in-nascor, nascī, natūs sūm (in in, nascor be born), spring up in.

inōpiā, ae, f. (inōpes fr. in negative, opes resources), want, scarcity.

inquam and **inquo**, defective verb, say.

insīdiae, ārūm, f. pl., treachery, deceit. INSIDIOUS.

insignīs, insignē (in upon, signum mark), remarkable, extraordinary; insignē, īs, n., sign.

in-stītuo, stītuērē, stītūlī, stītūtūm, appoint, INSTITUTE; train up, instruct.

instītūtūm, ī, n., custom; INSTITUTION.

in-strūo, struērē, struxī, struc-tūm (in without additional force, struo arrange), arrange, form, draw up. INSTRUCT, INSTRUCTIVE, INSTRUCTION.

intel-līgo (lēgo), līgērē, lexī, lectūm (inter between, lego choose), understand, know. INTELLIGENT.

intēr, prep. w. acc., between, among.

inter-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, ces-sūm (inter between, cedo go), intervene. INTERCEDE, INTERCESSION.

inter-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpī, cep-tūm (inter between, capio take), usurp; take away fraudulently; INTERCEPT.

inter-fīcio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (inter between, facio make), kill, slay.

inter-īmo, īmērē, īmī, emptūm, kill, put to death.

internēcio, īnīs, f. (internēco fr. inter completely, neco kill), slaughter.

interregn̄m, ī, n. (*inter between, regnum reign*), INTERREGNUM.
inter-sūm, essē, fuī (*inter between, sum be*), *be between, intervene.*

intervallūm, ī, n. (*inter between, vallum rampart*), INTERVAL, distance.

intro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, enter.

in-tueor, tuērī, tuītūs sūm (*in upon, at; tueor look*), *look at or upon.*

intūs, adv., *within.*

invīdiā, ae, f. (*invideo look askance at*), ENVY, hatred.

invītūs, ā, ūm, unwilling; sē invīto, *against his will.*

ipsē, ipsă, ipsūm [*see 113*], self; himself, herself, itself; very; ipse-rex, the very king.

irrētio, īrē, īvī, ītūm (*in in, rete net*), entangle, ensnare.

ir-rīdeo, rīdērē, rīsī, rīsūm (*in at, rideo laugh*), *laugh at, deride.*

irrīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, provoke, incite, IRRITATE. IRRITATION.

īs, eă, id, he, her, it; this; that [*see 113*].

Isocrātēs, īs, m., a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician.

itā, adv. (is), so, thus, in this manner, as follows.

Itāliā, ae, f., ITALY.

Itālūs, ā, ūm, Italian.

itā-quē, conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.

itēm, adv. (is), in like manner, likewise.

itēr, itēnērīs, n. (eo go), journey;

march; way, road, route; iter facere, to march. ITINERANT. itērūm, adv. (is), again, a second time.

J.

jāceo, ērē, uī, jācītūm, lie.

jācio, jācērē, jēcī, jactūm, throw, hurl, cast.

jām, adv., now, already.

Jānicūlūm, ī, n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome.

jūbeo, jūbērē, jussī, jussūm, command, order.

jūdīciūm, ī, n., (judex judge), judgment; trial; sentence; decision. JUDICIAL.

jūdīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (jus law, dico point out), JUDGE; determine, conclude; think. ADJUDICATE.

jūgūm, ī, n. (jungo join), yoke; ridge, summit: in war a frame made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection.

jūmentūm, ī, n., beast of burden as a horse or an ox.

Juppīter and Jūpīter, Jōvis, m., son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men.

Jūrā, ae, m., the Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland.

jūs, jūrīs, n., *right, law.* JURIST.
jūsjūrandūm, jūrisjūrandī, n.,
oath [see 110].

jussū, m. abl. (*jubeo command*),
by command.

justūs, ā, ūm (*ius law, suffix tus*
denoting fulness), JUST, *right.*

jūvo, jūvārē, jūvī, jūtūm, help,
aid, assist. AD-JUTANT.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Ro-
man praenomen.

Lăbiēnūs, ī. m., one of Caesar's
lieutenants in the Gallic war.

lăbōr, lăbōris, m., LABOR, *toil.*

lacrimă, ae, f., *tear.*

lăcūs, ūs, m., LAKE.

laetor, ārī, ātūs sūm (*laetus*
joyful), *rejoice, exult.*

laetūs, ā, ūm, *joyful.*

lănio, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *tear in*
pieces.

lăpīs, lăpīdīs, m., STONE. LAPID-
ARY.

lăqueūs, ī, m., *noose, snare.*

Lărentiă, ae, f. See Acca.

largītio, ūnīs, f. (*largior give*
bountifully), *liberality.*

lătē, adv. (*latus broad*), *widely,*
extensively.

Lătinūs, ī, m., an ancient king of
the Laurentes, a people of Italy.

latro, latrōnis, m., *robber.*

latro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *bark, bark*
at.

lătūs, lătēris, n., *side; flank.*
LATERAL.

lătūs, ā, ūm, *broad, wide; large,*
spacious. LATITUDE.

Lăvīniă, ae, f., daughter of Lati-
nus and second wife of Aenēas.

Lăvīniūm, ī, n., a city in Italy
built by Aenēas.

lēgātīo, ūnīs, f. (*lego send on*
an embassy), *embassy.* LEGA-
TION.

lēgātūs, ī, m. (*lego send as a rep-*
resentative), *ambassador, envoy,*
LEGATE; lieutenant.

lēgio, lēgiōnīs, f. (*lego levy*),
LEGION, a body of infantry va-
rying in number from 4000 to
6000, and generally accompa-
nied by about 300 cavalrymen.

lēgo, lēgērē, lēgī, lectūm,
choose.

Lēmannūs, ī, m., Lake Leman or
Geneva in Switzerland.

lēnitas, ātīs, f., *smoothness.*

leo, leōnīs, m., LION.

lētālīs, ē (*letum death; suffix*
alis, *belonging to*), *fatal, deadly.*

lēvītās, ātīs, f. (*lēvis smooth*),
smoothness.

lēvītās, ātīs, f. (*lēvis light*),
lightness. LEVITY.

lex, lēgīs, f., *law.* LEGAL.

libēr, libēră, libērūm, *free.*

libērālītās, ātīs, f. (*liberālis fr.*
liber free), *LIBERALITY, gen-*
erosity.

libērē, libēriūs, adv. (*liber free*),
freely, unreservedly.

libērī, ūrūm, m. pl., *children.*

libēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*liber*
free), *to free, LIBERATE.*

līceor, līcērī, līcītūs sūm, bid
at an auction.

līcēt, līcērē, līcuīt or līcītūm est, it is permitted, allowed; one may [see 128 and LN. LXIX., Examples 2–5].

līcēt, although.

Lingōnēs, ūm, m. pl, a people in Northeastern Gaul.

linguă, ae, f., tongue; LANGUAGE. LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

Lisoūs, ī, m., a magistrate among the Aedui.

littēră and lītēră, ae, f. (lino besmear), LETTER of the alphabet; pl., letter, epistle. LITERATURE.

lōcūs, ī, m. [pl. loci and loca], place. LOCAL, LOCALITY.

longē, longiūs, longissimē, adv. (longus long), far, by far; often used to strengthen superlatives.

longissimē, adv., very far.

longitūdo, īnīs, f. (longus long), length. LONGITUDE.

longūs, ā, ūm, long.

lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtūs sūm, speak, talk. LOQUACIOUS.

Lūcius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Lūcrētiā, ae, f., a Roman matron, wife of Collatīnus.

lūdūs, ī, m., play, game.

lūpă, ae, f., she-wolf.

lūpūs, ī, m., wolf.

lustro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, review.

lux, lūcīs, f. (luceo shine), light.

lýră, ae, f., lyre.

M.

M., abbreviation of Marcus, a Roman praenomen.

M̄., abbreviation of Mānius, a Roman praenomen.

măgīs, maximē, adv., more, rather.

măgistratūs, ūs, m. (magister fr. mag-, root of magnus, signifying to be great), magistrate.

magnitūdo, īnīs, f. (magnus great), size, MAGNITUDE.

magnūs, ā, ūm, great, large, big, mighty. MAGNI-

măjestās ātīs, f., MAJESTY, dignity.

măjōr, măjūs, gen. măjōrīs (comp. of magnus), larger, greater, bigger; măjōrēs, ūm, m. pl., ancestors. MAJOR.

mălē, pējūs, pessimē, adv., badly, ill, wickedly.

mălē-dīco, dīcērē, dīxī, dictūm (male ill, dico speak), speak ill of, revile, rail at; [with dat.] MALEDICTION.

mălēfīciūm, ī, n. [malefīcus doing evil], mischief, damage.

mălēfīcūs, ā, ūm (male wickedly, facio do), wicked; mălēfīcūs, ī, m., an evil-doer.

mălo, mallē, măluī (magis more, volo be willing), be more willing, choose rather, prefer [see 125].

mălūs, ā, ūm, bad, wicked, evil, destructive.

măneo, mănērē, mansī, man-sūm, stay, RE-MAIN.

mandātūm, ī, n. (mando fr. manus hand, do pu'; put in one's hand), charge, order, command.
MANDATE.

mānūs, ūs, f., hand; force of soldiers. MANUFACTURE.

Maniūs, ī, m. See M'.

Marcīus, ī, m., a Roman name.

Marcūs, ī, m. See M.

mārē, mārīs, n., sea.

mārītūs, ī, m. (marīta wife), belonging to a wife, husband.

Mars, Martīs, m., son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war.

MARTIAL.

massā, ae, f., MASS, lump.

mātēr, mātrīs, f., MOTHER; matron.

mātrīmōnium, ī, n. (mater mother), marriage; in matrimonium dare, to give in marriage; in matrimonium ducere, to marry. MATRIMONY.

Matrōna, ae, m., a river in Gaul, the modern Marne.

mātūrē, adv. (matūrus ripe), early, soon.

mātūro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, hasten, make haste.

mātūrūs, ā, ūm, ripe, MATURE.

mēdiocrītēr, adv. (mediocris fr. medius denoting a middle state), moderately; non mediocrīter, exceedingly.

mēdiūs, ā, ūm, in the middle or midst; in the middle of; middle, central.

mēl, mellīs, n., honey. MELLIFLUENT.

mēliōr, mēliūs, gen. mēliōrīs (comp. of bonus), better.

mēmīnī, mēmīnissē, remember [see 127].

mēmōr, gen. mēmōrīs, mindful of, mindful.

mēmōriā, ae, f. (memor mindful of), MEMORY, recollection, remembrance.

mens, mentīs, f., mind. See animus. MENTAL.

mensīs, mensīs, m., month.

mercātōr, ḍōrīs, m. (mercor to trade), trader, MERCHANT.

mercēs, mercēdīs, f., wages, hire, reward, price.

mēreo, ērē, uī, ītūm, deserve, acquire.

mērītūm, ī, n., desert. MERIT.

Messālā, ae, m., a Roman name.

mētīor, mētīrī, mensūs sūm, MEASURE, deal out.

Mettiūs, ī, m., Mettius Fufetius, an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.

meūs, ā, ūm, my, mine.

mīlēs, mīlītīs, m., soldier.

mīlītārīs, ē (miles soldier, aris belonging to), MILITARY; res militārīs, military science.

millē, pl. mīlia, mīliūm, thousand [see 108].

milviūs, ī, m., kite (a bird).

mīnīmē [parvē, mīnūs, mīnīmē], adv., least, by no means.

mīnīmūs, ā, ūm, least [see 85].

mīnōr, mīnūs, smaller, less [see 85]; minor natu, younger.

mīnuo, mīnuērē, mīnuī, mīnū-tūm, DI-MINISH. DIMINUTION.

mīnūs, adv. less. See minime.

mīror, ārī, ātūs sūm, AD-MIRE; wonder at.

mīrūs, ā, ūm (miror wonder at), wonderful.

mīsēr, mīsērā, mīsērūm, wretched, pitiable, lamentable, MISERABLE.

mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm, send.

moeniā, moeniūm, n. pl., walls of a city.

mollio, īrē, īvī, ītūm (mollis soft), soften, subdue.

mōneo, ērē, uī, ītūm, remind; advise, AD-MONISH.

mons, montīs, m., MOUNTAIN, MOUNT.

monstro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (monstrum a divine omen), show, point out. DE-MONSTRATE.

morbūs, ī, m., disease. MORBID.

mōrior, mōrī and mōrīrī, mortuūs sūm, die.

mōror, ārī, ātūs sūm, tarry, delay, hinder.

mors, mortīs, f., death. MORTAL.

mōs, mōrīs, m., custom, manner; usage; pl., character. MORAL.

mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm, MOVE; excite: castra movēre, to break up camp.

mūliēr, mūliērīs, f., woman.

multitūdo, īnīs, f. (multus much), MULTITUDE.

multūs, ā, ūm, much, many a; pl. many. MULTI-PLY.

mūnio, īrē, ivi, ītūm (moenia wall, rampart), fortify.

mūnītio, ḫnīs, f. (munio fortify), fortification. MUNITION.

mūnūs, mūnērīs, n., gift, reward. RE-MUNER-ATE.

mūs, mūrīs, m., mouse.

muscūlūs, m. (mus), a little mouse.

N.

nām, conj., for.

nascor, nascī, nātūs sūm, be born. NASCENT.

nātū, abl. sing. m., by birth; minor natu, younger.

nātūrā, ae, f. (nascor be born), NATURE.

nātūs, ā, ūm (nascor be born), old.

nāvīs, nāvīs, f., ship. NAV-AL, NAVI-GATE.

nē, adv., not; conj., that not; that.

nē, interrog. particle; is appended to first word of the question and asks for information.

nēc. See nēquē.

nēco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, kill, put to death.

nēgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, deny, refuse. NEGATION.

nēgōtiūm, ī, n. (nec not, otium leisure), business; quid negōti? what business? NEGOTIATE.

nēmo, nēmīnīs, m. and f. (ne not, homo a man), no one, nobody.

něpōs, něpōtīs, m., grandson.

NEPOTISM.

Neptūnūs, ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

nēquāquām, adv., by no means.

něquě, něc, conj., and not; něquě — něquě, neither — nor.

nervūs, ī, m., NERVE, vigor, energy.

nescio, īrě, īvī and īī, ītūm (ne not, scio know), not know.

neutěr, neutrā, neutrūm (ne not, uter one or the other), neither [see 24]. NEUTER.

nihil, n. indecl., nothing.

nihilō mīnūs, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nihilūm, ī, n., nothing.

nīsī, conj. (ne not, si if), if not, unless, except.

nītor, nītī, nīsūs or nīxus sūm, strive, endeavor.

nōbīlīs, nōbīlē (nosco know, bilis denoting capability), well known, NOBLE, of high rank.

nōbīlītās, ātīs, f. (nobīlis noble), NOBILITY.

nōlo, nollē, nōluī (non not, volo willing), be unwilling.

nōmēn, nōmīnīs, n., NAME.

nōn, adv., not.

nonně, interrog. particle, expects the answer yes.

non-nullūs, ā, ūm, some one; nonnullī, īrūm, m. pl., several persons.

Norēiā, ae, f., a town in Noricūm.

Norīcūs, ā, ūm, of Noricūm, a

country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., we [see 112].

nostěr, nostrā, nostrūm, our, ours.

nōto, īrě, īvī, ītūm (nota, a mark), mark. NOTE, NOTATION.

Noviodūnūm, ī, n., the name of several cities in Gaul.

nōvūs, ā, ūm, new, strange; recent, fresh; novae res, revolution; agmen novissīmūm, the rear. NOVEL.

nox, noctīs, f., night.

nūbēs, nūbīs, f., cloud.

nūbo, nūbērē, nupsī, nuptūm, veil herself for the bridegroom, marry [of a bride]. NUPTIAL.

nūdūs, ā, ūm, naked, bare; NUDE. nullūs, ā, ūm (ne not, ullus any one), no, none, not any one.

nūm, whether; in direct questions to be omitted in translation.

Nūma, ae, m., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nūmērūs, ī, m., NUMBER.

Nūmitōr, īrīs, m., father of Rhea Silvia.

nunc, adv., now.

nuncio, īrě, īvī, ītūm (nuncius messenger), AN-OUNCE, report.

nuncūpo, īrě, īvī, ītūm, to name.

nunquām and numquām, adv. (ne not, unquam ever), never.

nūpēr, adv. (novus new), newly, recently.

nutrio, īrě, īvī, ītūm, nourish.

NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nymphā, ae, f., a nymph; the nymphs were demi-goddesses inhabiting the sea, rivers, fountains, woods, trees, and mountains.

O.

ōb, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for.*

ōbēdio, īrē, īvī, ītūm (ob without any additional force, *audio listen to*), *listen to, obey; be subject to.* OBEDIENT.

ōb-eo, īrē, īvī and īi, ītūm (ob towards, *eo go*), *die.*

ōb-erro, īrē, īvī, ītūm (ob about, *erro wander*), *wander about, wander.*

ob-jīcio, jīcērē, jēcī, jectūm (ob before, *at*; *jacio throw*), *throw before, at, or against; throw up.* OBJECT, OBJECTION.

oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītūs sūm, forget.

ob-ruo, ruērē, ruī, rūtūm (ob without additional force, *ruo cast down with violence*), *overwhelm; cover.*

ob-secro, īrē, īvī, ītūm (ob on account of, *sacra sacrifices*), *beseech, implore.*

obsēs, obsīdīs, m. (*obsideo stay*), *hostage.*

ob-testor, īrī, ītūs sūm (ob with no additional force, *testor bear witness*), *conjure, beseech.*

ob-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (ob with no additional force, *teneo hold*), *hold, OBTAIN, possess.*

obviām, adv., in the way; obviām īrē or fiēri, to meet.

occāsūs, ūs, m. (*occido fall*), *going down; solis occāsu, a: sunset.*

oc-cīdo, cīdērē, cīdī, cīsūm (ob against, *caedo cut, strike*), *kill, slay.*

oc-culto, īrē, īvī, ītūm, hide, conceal. OCCULT.

oc-cūpo, īrē, īvī, ītūm (ob with no additional force, *capiō take*), *seize, take possession of, OCCUPY.* OCCUPATION.

oc-curro, currērē, cūcurrī and currī, cursūm (ob towards, *curro run*), *meet.* OCCUR, OCCURRENCE.

Oceānūs, ī, m., OCEAN.

Ocēlūm, ī, n., a town in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvūs, ā, ūm, eighth. OCTAVE.

octō-dēcīm, num. adj., eighteen.

octō-gintā, num. adj., eighty.

ōcūlūs, ī, m., eye. OCULIST.

ōdī, ūdissē, hate [see 127].

of-fendo, fendērē, fendi, fensūm, offend, wound. OFFENCE.

of-fēro, of-fērrē, ob-tūlī, ob-lātūm (ob towards, *fero bring*), OFFER, present.

offīciūm, ī, n. (*opes aid, facio render*), service, duty; *obedience, allegiance.* OFFICE.

omnīnō, adv. (*omnis all*), *altogether, at all.*

omnīs, omnē, *all, every, the whole.*

**OMNI-SCIENCE, OMNI-POTENT,
OMNI-PRESENT.**

ōnūs, ūnērīs, n., *load, burden ;
weight ; size.* **ONEROUS.**

ōpīs, ūpēm, ūpē [nom., dat., and
voc. sing. not used ; pl. entire] ;
pl., **ōpēs, ūpūm, ūpībūs**, etc. ;
f., *power ; means, resources.*

ōportēt, ūportērē, ūportuīt, it
*behooves, it is necessary, one
ought* [see 128 and LN. LXIX.,
Examples 6–8].

oppīdūm, ī, n., *town, walled
town.*

op-pugno, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ob
against, pugno fight), *attack,
besiege, assault.*

optio, ūnīs, f. (*opto choose*),
choice, OPTION.

ōpūs, ūpērīs, n., *work, labor.*

ōrātio, ūrātiōnīs, f. (*oro speak*),
speech, harangue ; ORATION.

ōrātōr, ūrātōrīs, m. (*oro plead*),
ORATOR.

ordīno, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*ordo
arranging*), *arrange, order.*

Orgētōrix, īgīs, m., *the noblest
and richest among the Helvetii.*

ōriens, gen. ūrientīs (part. fr.
orior), *rising.* **ORIENT.**

ōrior, ūrīrī, ortūs sūm, rise,
arise, begin.

ornāmentūm, ī, n. (*orno adorn*),
ORNAMENT, distinction.

ōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*os mouth*),
beseech, beg ; implore, pray.

ōs, ūrīs, n., mouth ; face. **ORAL.**
ōs, ossīs, n., bone. **OSSI-FY.**

os-tendo, tendērē, tendī, ten-
tūm (ob before, *tendo spread*),
show, point out, exhibit. **OSTEN-**
SIBLE.

Ostiā, ae, f., a town at the mouth
of the Tiber, built by Ancus
Marius.

ostīūm, ī, n., *mouth of a river.*

ōvūm, ī, n., *egg.* **OVAL.**

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Ro-
man praenomen.

pābūlātīo, ūnīs, f., *foraging.*

pābūlūm, ī, n. (*pasco feed*),
food.

pāco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*pax peace*),
PACIFY ; subdue.

paenē, adv., almost, nearly.

pāgūs, ī, m., *district, canton.*

pār, gen. pārīs, equal, like. **PAR.**
pārātūs, ā, ūm (part. of *paro
prepare*), *PRE-PARED, ready.*

**parco, parcērē, pēpercī and
parsī, parcītūm and parsūm**
(*parcus spare*), *to spare.*

pārio, pārērē, pēpērī, pārītūm
and *partūm*, *bear, bring forth ;
ovum parere, to lay an egg.*

**pars, partīs, f., PART, share ;
side ; direction.**

parvūs, ā, ūm [comp., *minor*,
superl., *minimus*], *small, little,
insignificant.*

pascor, pascī, pastūs sūm, feed,
graze.

passūs, ūs, m. (*pando stretch out the feet*), *step, PACE*; as a measure of length, about five feet.

pastōr, pastōris, m. (*pasco feed*), *shepherd. PASTOR.*

pătē-făcio, făcérē, fēcī, factūm (*pateo be open, facio make*), *make open, open.*

pătēr, pătris, m., FATHER.

păternūs, ā, ūm (*pater father*), *PATERNAL.*

pătior, pătī, passūs sūm, let, allow; suffer. PASSION, PAS-
SIVE.

pătria, ae, f. (*pater father*), *native land, futherland. PA-*
TRIAL.

paucī, ae, ā, adj. pl., few.

paulūs, ā, ūm, little; paulo, n.
abl. sing., *by a little, little.*

pāvo, ôniš, m. and f., peacock.

pax, pācīs, f., PEACE. PACIFY.

pellīs, pellīs, f., skin.

pello, pellērē, pěpūlī, pulsūm,
drive out or away, banish; rout.
RE-PULSE.

pennă, ae, f., feather. PEN.

pěr, prep. w. acc., through; by means of, by.

per-cūtio, cūtērē, cussī, cussūm (*per through, quatio strike*),
strike through, strike. PERCUS-
SION.

per-do, děrē, dīdī, dītūm (*per through, do put*), *lose. PERDI-*
TION.

per-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, duc-
tūm (*per through, duco lead*),

lead through or to, conduct; fos-
sam perducēre, to extend or make a trench.

per-făcīlis, ē (*per very, facīlis easy*), *very easy.*

per-fīcio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*per completely, facio make*), *accomplish. PERFECTION.*

perfīdiā, ae, f. (*perfidus one who breaks his promise*), *PERFIDY.*

pērīcūlōsūs, ā, ūm (*pericūlum danger; suffix ōsus full of*), *DANGEROUS.*

pērīcūlūm, ī, n., danger, risk, PERIL.

pērītūs, ā, ūm, skilful, experienced.

per-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, mis-
sūm (*per through, mitto let go*), *PERMIT, allow. PERMISSION.*

per-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mō-
tūm (*per completely, moveo more*), *prevail upon.*

pernīciēs, pernīciēī, f. (*pernēco fr. per completely, neco kill*), *ruin, destruction. PERNICIOUS.*

perpaucī, ae, ā (*per very, pauci few*), *very few.*

per-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm (*per perseveringly, sequor follow*), *pursue. PERSECUTE.*

per-sēvēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*per sevērus very strict*), *PERSE-*
VERE, continue.

per-suādeo, suādērē, suāsī,
suāsūm (*per thoroughly, suadeo advise*), *PERSUADE, prevail upon. PERSUASION.*

per-terreo, ērē, uī, ītūm (*per thoroughly, terreo frighten*), *thoroughly friglten, terrify.*

per-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (*per thoroughly, teneo hold, lay hold of*), *extend; reach, tend; PERTAIN, belong.*

per-turbo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*per thoroughly, turbo disturb*), *greatly disturb, DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.*

per-vēnio, vēnīrē, vēnī, ven-tūm (*per quite through, venio come*), *come through, come to; arrive; reach.*

pēs, pēdīs, m., *foot. PEDAL.*

pēto, pētērē, pētīvī and pētīī, pētītūm, *ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack. PETITION.*

pētūlantiā, ae, f. (*petūlans saucy*), *sauciness; insolence; PETULANCE.*

pīleūs, ī, m., *hat; cap.*

pīlūm, ī, n., *javelin.*

Pīso, ūnīs, m., a Roman consul.

pistrīnūm, ī, n. (*pistor miller*), *mill.*

plāceo, plācērē, plācuī, plācī-tūm, *PLEASE; plācēt, impers., it pleases, it seems good.*

plāgā, ae, f., *hunting-net, toil.*

plebs, plēbīs, f., *commons, common people.*

plūrīmūs, ā, ūm [*superl. of multus*], *most.*

plūs, plūrīs [*compar. of multus, see 85*], *more.*

poenā, ae, f., *punishment. PENAL.*

polīceor, polīcērī, polīcītūs ūm (*insep. prefix pot largely, liceor offer*), *promise.*

pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm, *place, put; castra pōnērē, to pitch a camp. POSITION.*

pons, pontis, m, *bridge.*

pōpūlātīo, ūnīs, f., *ravaging.*

pōpūlor, ārī, ātūs ūm (*populus people*), *ravage, lay waste. DE-POPULATE.*

pōpūlūs, ī, m., *PEOPLE; pl., nations, tribes.*

portā, ae, f., *gate. PORTAL.*

por-tendo, tendērē, tendī, ten-tūm, *fortell, predict, presage; betoken; PORTEND.*

porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *carry, bear, TRANS-PORT. EX-PORT.*

portōriūm, ī, n. (*porto carry*), *duty paid on goods imported or exported.*

posco, poscērē, pōposcī, *no sup., demand.*

possessio, ūnīs, f. (*possideo possess*), *POSSESSION.*

pos-sīdeo, sīdērē, sēdī, sessūm (*potis powerful, sedeo sit*), *be master of; POSSESS.*

pos-sūm, pos-sē, pot-uī (*potis able, sum be*), *be able, can [see 68].*

post, prep. w. acc., *after.*

posteā, adv. (*post after, ea that*), *after that, afterwards.*

post-eā-quām, *after that, after.*

postērūs, ā, ūm [*comp., posterior; superl., postrēmus and postūmus*], *following, ensuing,*

succeeding; postero die, on the following day; postērī, ūrūm, m. pl., descendants.

post-quām, conj., *after, as soon as.*

postrīdiē, adv. (*postero following, die on the day), on the following day.*

postūlo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, ask for, demand.

pōtens, gen. **pōtentīs** (*possum be able), able, powerful, influential.* POTENT.

pōtestās, ātīs, f. (*potens able), ability, power; opportunity; alli- cui pōtestātēm fācērē, to give any one an opportunity.*

pōtior, pōtīrī, pōtītūs sūm (*potis able), acquire, obtain, get possession of.*

pōtiūs, adv., *rather, sooner.*

prae-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, ces- sūm (*prae before, cedo go), surpass, excel; PRECEDE. PRECEDENCE, PRECEDENT.*

praecīpīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*praeceps headlong), throw violently, throw.* PRECIPITATE.

praecīpuē, adv. (*praecipuus fr. praecipio fr. prae before, capio take), especially, chiefly.*

prae-dīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*prae publicly, dico tell), proclaim, de- clare; boast.* PREDICATE.

prae-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm (*prae before, fero bear), PREFER.*

prae-fīcio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*prae over, facio place), place over, put in command of.*

prae-mitto, mittērē, misī, mis- sūm (*prae forward, mitto send), send forward.*

praeimiūm, ī, n. (*prae beyond others, emo take), profit, reward.* PREMIUM.

prae-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pō- sītūm (*prae before, first; pono put), put before or first; prefer.* PREPOSITION.

praesēpē, īs, n. (*prae sepio, to fence in front), manger.*

praeſīdiūm, ī, n. (*prae sideo fr. prae before, sedeo sit), defence, protection; guard, garrison.*

prae-sto, stārē, stītī, stītūm and **stātūm** (*prae before, sto stand), stand before, excel; se praestāre, to show one's self.*

prae-sūm, essē, fui (*prae over, sum be), be over, rule over, be in command of.*

praeſērē, prep. w. acc. (*prae before and suffix ter), past, by; besides, except.*

praeter-eo, īrē, ii, ītūm (*prae- ter by, eo go), go by.* PRETERIT.

praeter-quām, adv., except.

praeſōr, praeſōrīs, m., praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually.

prātūm, ī, n., meadow.

prēcī, prēcēm, prēcē [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., **prē- cēs, prēcūm, etc., request,** prayer.

prēmo, prēmērē, pressī, pres-

sūm, PRESS, *press upon*. OP-PRESSION.

prētiūm, ī, n., *worth, value, price*.

AP-PRECIEATE.

priđiē, adv., *on the day before*.

prīmo, adv. (primus), *at first*.

prīmūm, adv. (primus), *at first; quām prīmūm, as soon as possible*.

prīmūs, ā, ūm [see 85], *first; prīmūm (agmēn), the van of an army*. PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY.

prīnceps, gen. **prīncipīs**, adj. (primus *first*, capio *take*), *first, chief; prīnceps, ip̄s*, m., *chief, leader*. PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.

prīcipātūs, ūs, m. (*prīnceps chief*). *first place; pre-eminence; principātūm tenēre, to be at the head*.

priōr, prius [superl. **prīmūs**, see 85], *the former; first*.

Priscus, ī, m., a surname of the elder Tarquin.

pristīnūs, ā, ūm, *former; PRISTINE*.

priusquām, adv., *before*.

privātim, adv. (privus *single*), *as a private citizen*.

privātūs, ā, ūm (*part. of privo deprive*), PRIVATE.

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, for, instead of*.

prōbo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*probus good*), *show; PROVE. PROBATION*.

Prōcās, ae, m. See **Silvius**.

prō-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm

(*pro forward, cedo go*), *go forth, PROCEED, advance. PROCESSION*.

prōcūl, adv. (*procello drive forward*), *afar off, far*.

prō-cūro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*pro for, curo care*), *care for, take care of, manage. PROCURE*.

prōdīgiūm, ī, n. (*pro beforehand, root dic point out*), PRODIGY.

proeliūm, ī, n., *battle*.

prōfectio, ōnīs, f. (*proficiscor set out*), *departure*.

prō-fīciscor, fīcīscī, fectūs sūm (*pro forwards, facio put one's self*), *set out, depart; go, march, travel*.

prō-fūgio, fūgērē, fūgī, fūglītūm (*pro before, fugio flee*), *flee before, flee*.

prō-hībeo, hībērē, hībuī, hībītūm (*pro in front, habeo hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from; PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION*.

prō-jīcio, jīcērē, jēcī, jectūm (*pro forward, jacio throw*), *throw forward, cast away; se prō-jīcērē, to throw one's self forward or down. PROJECT*.

prō-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm (*pro forward, moveo move*), *move forward, advance. PROMOTION*.

prōpē, prōpiūs, proximē, adv., *near, almost*.

prōpēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*pro pērus speedy*), *hasten*.

prōpinquūs, ī, m. (*prope not far, hinc hence*), *relative; prōpin-*

quā, ae, f., *kinswoman*. PROPINQUITY.

prōpiōr, prōpiūs [superl. proximus, see 85], nearer.

prō-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsī-tūm (prō before, pono place), expose to view; PROPOSE. PROPOSAL, PROPOSITION.

proptēr, prep. w. acc., on account of.

proptēr-eā, adv., for this reason.

protērēa quōd, because.

prō-spīcio, spīcērē, spexī, spectūm (pro forwards, specio look), look forwards; look out for. PROSPECT, PROSPECTIVE.

prō-sūm, prōd-essē, prō-fuī (pro(d) for, sum be), be for, be useful; benefit, profit.

prōvinciā, ae, f., province.

proximē, adv. [positive prōpē, compar. prōpiūs], very near, very recently, last.

proximūs, ā, ūm [see 85], next, nearest; ensuing, last. PROXIMITY, APPROXIMATE.

publīcē, adv. (publicus fr. populus people), in the name of the state.

Publiūs, ī, m., a Roman name.

pūdōr, pūdōrīs, m. (pudeo feel shame), shame, feeling of shame.

puellā, ae, f., girl.

puēr, puērī, m., boy. PUER-ILE. puēritia, ae, f. (puer boy), boyhood, childhood.

pugnā, ae, f., battle. PUGNACIOUS.

pugno, ārē, āvī, ātūm, fight.

pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm (polio polish), beautiful.

pūnio, īrē, īvī, ītūm (poena punishment), PUNISH.

pūpillus, ī, m. (pupūlus a little boy), PUPIL, ward.

pūto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, think, believe.

Pyrēnaeūs, ā, ūm, Pyrenean; Pyrēnaeī montes, the Pyrenees.

Q.

quā, adv. (qui) where.

quādrāgēsīmūs, ā, ūm (quadrāginta forty), fortieth.

quādrāgintā, num. adj. indecl. (quattuor four), forty.

quaero, quaerērē, quaeſīvī and quaeſīī, quaeſītūm, see, ask, IN-QUIRE. IN-QUEST, IN-QUISITION.

quālīs, quālē, of what sort; as.

quām, conj. and adv., than; as.

quām-ob-rēm, adv., on account of which thing; for which reason; wherefore.

quam-quām, conj., although.

quamvis, conj. (quam as, vis you will), as you will; however much; although.

quantūs, ā, ūm, how much; how great; as; quantum boni, how much good.

quārē, adv. (abl. of quae and res), for which thing, for which.

quartūs, ā, ūm (quattuor four), fourth. QUART.

quattuōr, num. adj. indecl., *four.*
quē, conj., *and* [see LN. XXIII.,
 VY., 1].

quērōr, **quērī**, **questūs sūm**,
complain. QUERULOUS.

qui, **quae**, **quōd**, rel. pron., *who*,
which, what; that [see 114].

qui, **quae**, **quōd** [interrog. pro-
 noun used adjectively, see 116],
which? what? what sort of a?
what kind of a?

quiđ, *why?* [see LN. XCII.,
 NOTE 1].

quiđām, **quaedām**, **quodđām**
 or **quiddām**; gen. **cujusđām**;
 [indef. pron. declined like qui],
a certain.

quiđēm, adv., *indeed; ne —*
quiđem, not — even.

quiñ, conj. (*qui by which, ne not*),
but that, that not.

quinděcīm, num. adj. indecl.
 (*quinque five, decem ten*), *fif-
 teen.*

quingentī, ae, ā (*quinque five,*
centum hundred), *five hundred.*

quiñī, ae, ā (*quinque five*), *five*
each.

quiš, **quae**, **quiđ**, interrog. pron.,
who? what? [see 116].

quiš, indef. pronoun, *anybody,*
anything [see 116].

quisquām, **quaequām**, **quid-
 quām** or **quicquām**; gen. **cujusquām**;
 [indef. pron. declined like quis], *any one, anything,*
any.

quō, adv., *that, in order that.*

quōd, conj., *because, that.*

quōmđdō, adv. (*qui what, mo-
 dus manner*), *in what manner,*
by what means, how.

quōdquē, conj., *also.*

quōtīdiē, adv. (*quot every, dies*
day), *every day, daily.*

quūm and **cūm**, rel. adv., *when,*
as; conj., *since;* *although;*
quūm — tūm, *both — and.*

R.

rādix, **rādīcīs**, f., *root*; **radix** or
radīces montis, *the foot of a*
mountain. RADISH.

rāpīnā, ae, f. (*rapio seize*), *plun-
 dering;* RAPINE.

rāpio, **rāpērē**, **rāpuī**, **raptūm**,
seize, plunder. RAPTURE.

raptōr, **ōrīs**, m. (*rapio seize*),
one who seizes; robber.

Raurācī, **ōrūm**, m., a people in
 Northeastern Gaul, neighbors
 of the Helvetii.

rēcens, gen. **rēcentīs**, RECENT,
fresh, new.

rē-cīpīo, **cīpērē**, **cēpī**, **ceptūm**
 (*re back, capio take*), *take back;*
 RECEIVE; *se recipēre, to be-*
take one's self, withdraw. RE-
 CEPTION.

red-do, **dērē**, **dīdī**, **dītūm** (*re(d)*
back again, do give), *return.*
 RENDER, RENDITION.

rēd-eo, **īrē**, **iī**, **ītūm** (*re(d) back,*
eo go), *go back, return.*

rēd-īmo, **īmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**
 (*re(d) back, emō buy*), *buy back,*
release, ransom; purchase; hire,

- farm.* **REDEEM,** **REDEMPTION.**
- rē-dītio, ūnis, f.** (*redeo go back*), *going back, return.*
- rē-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm** (*re back, duco lead*), *lead back, lead.* **REDUCE, REDUCTION.**
- rē-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm** (*re back, fero bear*), *bear or bring back, restore.* **REFER, RELATE.**
- re-fluo, fluērē, no perf. nor sup.** (*re back, fluo flow*), *flow back.* **REFLUENT, REFLUX.**
- rēgio, ūnis, f., REGION.**
- rēgiūs, ā, ūm** (*rex king*), *royal.*
- regno, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*regnum rule*), *reign, rule.*
- regnūm, ī, (rego to rule)**, *royal power, sovereignty; government; kingdom.*
- rē-jīcio, jīcērē, jēcī, jectūm** (*re back, jacio throw*), *throw back, hurl back.* **REJECT, REJECTION.**
- rēlīgio, ūnis, f., RELIGION, sanctity.**
- rē-linquo, linquērē, līquī, lic-tūm** (*re behind, linquo leave*), *leave behind, leave; quit, abandon.* **RELINQUISH.**
- rēlīquūs, ā, ūm** (*relinquo let remain*), *remaining, rest of.*
- rē-māneo, mānērē, mansī, mansūm** (*re behind, maneo stay*), *stay behind, REMAIN.*
- rēmīniscor, rēmīnisci, recall to mind, recollect.** **REMINISCENCE.**
- rē-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mō-**
- tūm** (*re back, moveo move*), **REMOVE. REMOTE.**
- Rēmūs, ī, m., twin brother of Romulus.**
- rē-nuncio, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*re back, nuncio bring word*), *report.* **RENOUNCE.**
- rēpentē, adv.** (*repens sudden*), *suddenly.*
- rē-pērio, pērīrē, pērī, pertūm** (*re again, pario produce*), *find, discover.*
- rē-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsī-tūm** (*re again, pono place*), *place again, restore.* **REPOSE.**
- rēs, rēl, f., thing, affair.**
- re-scindo, scindērē, scidī, scis-sūm** (*re away, scindo cut*), *cut away, destroy.* **RESCIND.**
- re-spondeo, spondērē, spondī, sponsūm** (*re in return, spondeo promise*), *reply, answer.* **RESPOND.**
- responsūm, ī, n.** (*respondeo reply*), *answer.* **RESPONSE.**
- respublīcā, reīpublīcae, f.** (*res affair, publica belonging to the people*), **REPUBLIC, commonwealth [see 110].**
- re-stītuo, stītuērē, stītuī, stī-tūtūm** (*re again, statuo set up*), *restore.* **RESTITUTION.**
- rē-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm** (*re back, teneo hold*), *hold back, restrain, prevent.* **RETENTION.**
- rēvērentiā, ae, f.** (*revereor stand in awe of*), **REVERENCE.**
- rē-verto, vertērē, vertī, ver-sūm** and

rē-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm (re back, verto turn), turn back, return. REVERT, REVERSION.

rē-vōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (re back, voco call), call back. REVOKE.

rex, rēgīs, m., king. REGAL.

Rhea, ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnūs, ī, m., the Rhine.

Rhōdānūs, ī, m., the Rhone.

rīpā, ae, f., bank (of a stream).

rīxor, ārī, ātūs sūm (rixia quarrel), to quarrel.

rōgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, ask, demand, request.

Rōmā, ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānūs, ā, ūm, Roman; Rōmānūs, ī, m., a Roman.

Rōmūlūs, ī, m., the founder and first king of Rome; Romulus

Silvius, a king of Alba.

rūpes, rūpīs, f. (rumpo break), rock, cliff.

S.

Sābinī, īrūm, m., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.

sācēr, sacrā, sacrūm, SACRED; sacrā, īrūm, n. pl., sacred rites, sacrifices.

sācerdōs, ītīs, m. and f. (sacer sacred, do give), priest; priestess.

saepē, saepiūs, saepissīme, adv., often.

saepē-nūmēro, adv., oftentimes, frequently.

sālūto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (salus greeting), greet, SALUTE. SALUTATION.

sanguīs, sanguīnīs, m., blood. SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.

Santōnēs, ūm and Santōnī, īrūm, m. pl., a people of Aquitania.

sāpientiā, ae, f. (sapiens wise), wisdom.

sarcinā, ae, f. (sarcio to patch), bundle; pl., baggage carried by soldiers. See impedimenta.

sātīs, adv., enough, sufficiently; used adjectively in the sense of sufficient.

sātis-fācio, fācērē, fēcī, factūm (satis enough, facio do), do enough, SATISFY, give SATISFACTION.

Sāturniā, ae, f., a town built by Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.

Sāturnūs, ī, m. (sero sow), Saturn, the father of Jupiter; honored as the god of agriculture.

scēlūs, scēlērīs, n., crime, guilt, wickedness.

scio, scīrē, scīvī and scīī, scītūm, know, understand. SCIENCE.

scrībo, scrībērē, scripsi, scrip-tūm, write. SCRIBE, DE-SCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.

scūtūm, ī, n., a shield; [scutum was an oblong shield, made of wood, and covered with leather; clipeus, a round brazen shield.]

sēd, conj., but.

sēdēs, sēdīs, f. (sedeo sit), seat;

- dwelling-place; sedes regni, seat of government.*
- S**ēgūsiānī, ūrūm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, neighbors of the Allobroges and Aedui.
- s**ēmēl, adv., once.
- s**emp̄r, adv., always, continually.
- s**ēnātōr; ūrīs, m. (senex old), SENATOR.
- s**ēnātūs, ūs, m. (senex old), SENATE.
- s**ēnī, ae, ā (sex six), six each.
- s**ententiā, ae, f. (sentio think), opinion. SENTENCE.
- s**ept̄em, num. adj. indecl., seven.
- s**ept̄entriōnēs (septemtriōnēs), ūm, m. pl., the north; sub septentrionib⁹s, towards the north.
- s**ept̄imūs, ā, ūm (septem seven), seventh.
- S**ēquānā, ae, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Seine.
- S**ēquānī, ūrūm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, dwelling on the Sequanā.
- S**ēquānūs, ā, ūm, of the Sequani.
- s**ēquor, sēqui, sēcūtūs sūm, follow; accompany. SEQUENCE.
- s**ermo, sermōnīs, m., discourse, conversation. SERMON.
- s**ervītūs, ūtīs, f. (servus slave), slavery, bondage.
- S**erviūs, ī, m., Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.
- s**ervūs, ī, m., slave, SERVANT.
- s**ex, num. adj. indecl., six.
- s**ī, conj., if; whether; see whether.
- s**ic, adv., so, thus.
- s**iccūs, ā, ūm, dry; siccūm, ī, n., dry land.
- s**ic-ūt and sīc-ūtī, adv., as; as if.
- s**ignifīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (signum sign, facio make), mean, SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT.
- s**ignūm, ī, n., SIGN, mark; SIGNAL.
- s**ilvā, ae, f., woods, forest. SILVAN.
- S**ilviā, ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
- S**ilviūs, ī, m., name of several kings of Alba; **S**ilvius Procas, a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.
- s**imilis, similē, like, SIMILAR.
- s**in, conj. (si if, ne not), but if.
- s**inē, prep. w. abl., without.
- s**ingūlī, ae, ā, SINGLE, one by one; each.
- s**inistēr, sinistrā, sinistrūm, left. SINISTER.
- s**ōcēr, sōcērī, m., father-in-law.
- s**ōciūs, ī, m., ally. AS-SOCI-ATE.
- s**ōl, sōlīs, m., sun. SOLAR.
- s**ōleo, sōlērē, sōlītūs sūm, be wont, be accustomed.
- s**ōlītūdo, īnīs, f. (solus alone), desert; solitary place; SOLITUDE.
- s**ōlūm, adv. (solus alone), only, alone.
- s**ōlūm, ī, n., ground, SOIL.
- s**ōlūs, ā, ūm, alone, only [see 24].
- s**ōnītūs, ūs, m (sono make a noise), sound, noise.

sōnūs, ī, m. (*sono make a noise*), *noise.*

sōrōr, sōrōrīs, f., *sister.*

spātiūm, ī, n., *SPACE; opportunity.*

specto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*specio look*), *look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.*

spēs, spēi, f. *hope, expectation.*

spirītūs, ūs, m. (*spiro breathe*), *breath; pride; lofty airs.*

spontē, f. abl. [gen. *spontis*; no other cases found], *of free will; suā sponte, of his own free will.*

SPONTANEOUS.

stātuo, stātuērē, stātuī, stātū-tūm (*status standing*), *set up; put; establish; decide.* STATUTE.

stērīlīs, ē, unfruitful, STERILE.

stīpendiūm, ī, n. (*stips contribution, pendo pay*), *tax, tribute.* STIPEND.

sto, stārē, stētī, stātūm, stand; nobis sanguīne stat, it costs us blood. STATE, STATION.

stōlidūs, ā, ūm, foolish. STOLID.

strēnuūs, ā, ūm, bold, brave. STRENUOUS.

stūdeo, stūdērē, stūduī, no sup., be eager or zealous, desire.

stūdium, ī, n. (*studeo be eager*), *zeal, desire.* STUDY.

suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suā-sūm, advise, PER-SUADE.

sūb, prep. w. abl., under, beneath; in the time of; sub monte, at the foot of a mountain.

sub-dūco dūcērē, duxī, duc-

tūm (*sub from under, duco draw*), *draw from under; withdraw; take away.*

sub-eo, irē, īvī and īī, ītūm (*sub under, eo go*), *go under; endure.*

sūbīto, adv. (*subitus sudden*), *suddenly, quickly.*

sub-lēvo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*sub from beneath, levo lift up*), *raise up, support; help, aid.*

sub-rīdeo, rīdērē, rīsī, rīsūm (*sub a little, rideo laugh*), *smile.*

sub-sīlio, sīlīrē, sīluī and sīliī, no sup. (*sub up, salio leap*), *leap up, jump.*

sub-vēho, vēhērē, vēxi, vec-tūm (*sub from below, vaho carry*), *bring up, transport.*

suc-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, ces-sūm (*sub behind, cedo come*), *SUCCEED, follow.* SUCCESSION.

Suēvī, ḥrūm, m. pl., a powerful people of Germany.

sūl, of himself, herself, itself, themselves [see 112]. SUICIDE. See caedo.

Sullā, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, a celebrated Roman.

sūm, essē, fuī, be [see 62].

summā, ae, f. (*summus highest*), *amount, sum total.* SUM.

summūs, ā, ūm, highest [positive *supērus*, comparative *supērior*, superlative *suprēmus* and *summus*].

sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsī, sump-tūm, take, AS-SUME. AS-SUMPTION.

sūpēr, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon.* SUPER-.

sūperbio, īrē, no perf. nor sup. (*superbus proud*), *be proud of.*

sūperbūs, ā, ūm, *proud; Superbūs, ī, m., the Proud*, a surname of the younger Tarquin, the last king of Rome.

sūpēriōr, **sūpēriūs**, *upper, higher; former.* SUPERIOR. See *supērus*.

sūpērūs, ā, ūm [comp. *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*] (*super over, above*), *above, on high, upper.*

sūpēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*super over*), *surmount, surpass, overcome, subdue.*

sūper-sūm, *essē, fuī* (*super over, beyond; sum be*), *be over; survive.*

supplīcūm, ī, n., *punishment.*

sus-cīpō, cīpērē, cēpī, *ceptūm* (*sub under, capio take*), *undertake, take upon; engage in; receive; sibi suscipēre, to take upon one's self.*

suspīcio, ūnīs, f. (*suspīcor suspect*), SUSPICION.

suspīcor, ārī, ātūs ūm (*suspīcio fr. sub secretly, specio look at*), SUSPECT.

sus-tīneō, tīnērē, tīnuī, *tēnētūm* (*sub up, teneo hold*), *hold up, SUSTAIN; endure; withstand.*

suūs, ā, ūm (*sui*), *his, his own; her, her own; its, its own; their, their own.*

T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.

tābūlā, ae, f., *board; writing-table; muster-roll.* TABLE.

tālentūm, ī, n., a TALENT, a sum of money equal to about \$1200.

tām, adv., *so, so very.*

tāmēn, adv., *nevertheless; yet, still.*

tamquām and **tanquām**, adv. (*tam so, quam as*), *as much as; as if.*

Tānāquīl, ūlīs, f., wife of Tarquinus Priscus.

tandēm, adv., *at length; at last.*

tantūs, ā, ūm, *so great, such, so large.*

tardītās, ātīs, f. (*tardus slow*), *slowness, TARDINESS; heaviness.*

Tarpēiā, ae, f., *Tarpeia* [pronounced *Tar-pé-ya*], daughter of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēiūs, ā, ūm, *Tarpeian* [pronounced *Tar-pé-yan*]; *mons Tarpēius, the Tarpeian Rock*, the name of a rock on the Capitoline hill from which criminals were thrown headlong; *the Tarpeian Mount.*

Tarquīniī, ūrūm, m. pl., an ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquīniūs, ī, m., *Tarquin*, the name of an illustrious Roman family, of which two, Priscus and Superbus, were kings.

tectūm, ī, n. (*tego to cover*), roof.

tēlūm, ī, n., *weapon, missile.*

tempēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*tempus a piece cut off*), abstain.
TEMPER, TEMPERATE.

tempestās, ātīs, f. (*tempus time*), storm; TEMPEST.

templūm, ī, n., TEMPLE.

tempūs, tempōris, n., time.
TEMPORAL.

tēneo, tēnērē, tēnuī, tentūm, hold; have, possess; keep; restrain; mēmōriā tēnērē, to remember.

tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm, TENDER, delicate.

tento, ārē āvī, ātūm, try. TENTATIVE.

terrā, ae, f., earth, land, ground.
TERRACE.

terreo, ērē, uī, ītūm, frighten,
TERRI-FY.

terrīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*terreo frighten*), terrify.

terrītōriūm, ī, n. (*terra earth*), TERRITORY.

tertio, adv. (*tertius third*), the third time.

testīs, testīs, m. and f., witness.
TESTIFY.

Ti., abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a Roman praenomen.

Tibērīs, īs [acc. īm, abl. ī], m., the *Tiber*, a river in Italy on which Rome is situated.

Tibēriūs, ī, m. See Ti.

tīmeo, ērē, uī, no supine, to fear.

tīmīdūs, ā, īm, (*timeo to fear*), TIMID; cowardly.

tīmōr, tīmōris, m., fear. TIMOROUS.

tītinnābūlūm, ī, n. (*tintinno to ring*), bell.

Tītūs, ī, m. See T.

tollo, tollērē, sustūlī, sublātūm, lift, raise; pick up; remove, take away; destroy.

tōnitrūs, ūs, m., and tōnitrū, n. indecl. (*tono to thunder*), thunder.

tōno, tōnārē, tōnūlī, tōnitūm, thunder.

tōtūs, ā, īm, whole, entire.

trā-dūco and trans-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (*trans across, duco lead*), lead across·lead; lead from one place to another. TRADUCE.

trans, prep. w. acc., across, over; beyond. TRANS-.

trans-eo, īrē, ii, ītūm (*trans across, over; eo go*), go across or over; cross. TRANSIT, TRANSITIVE, TRANSIENT, TRANSITION.

trans-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm (*trans across, fero bear*), bear across; TRANSFER. TRANSLATION.

trans-īgo, īgērē, īgi, actūm (*trans through to the end, ago bring*), bring to an end; spend. TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

tran-sīlio or trans-sīlio, sīlīrē, sīlīvī, sīliiī, or sīlūlī, sultūm (*trans over, salio leap*), leap over.

trans-porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm
(*trans across, porto carry*),
carry across, TRANSPORT.

TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, triā [see 108], *three.*

Trēvīrī, ūrūm, m. pl., a people
of Northern Gaul.

trībūnūs, ī, m. (*tribus tribe*),
TRIBUNE; **trībūni** **mīlitūm**,
military tribunes, of which offi-
cers each legion had six.

trībuo, trībuērē, trībuī, trībū-
tūm, *give, grant, bestow.* **TRIB-**
UTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-TRI-
BUTION.

trīcēsīmūs, ā, ūm (*triginta thir-*
ty), *thirtieth.*

trīduūm, ī, n. (*tres three, dies*
day), *three days.*

trīgēmīnī, ūrūm, m. pl. (*tres*
three gignor be born), *three*
brothers born at a birth.

trīgintā, num. adj. indecl., *thirty.*

tristīs, tristē, *sad, sorrowful.*

triumpho, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*tri-*
umphus a triumph), *to triumph.*

Trōjā, ae, f., *Troy*, a city in the
northwestern part of Asia Mi-
nor.

Trōjānūs, ā, ūm, *Trojan.*

tū, pers. pron., *thou, you* [see 112].

tūbā, ae, f. (*akin to tubus, a*
tube), *trumpet.*

tūbīcēn, īnīs, m. (*tuba trumpet,*
cano to sound), *trumpeter.*

Tulingī, ūrūm, m. pl., a people
of Southern Germany, neigh-
bors of the Helvetii.

Tulliūs, ī, m. See **Servius.**

Tulliā, ae, f., daughter of Servius
Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius
Superbus.

Tullūs, ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the
third king of Rome.

tūm, adv., then; also.

tūmūlūs, ī, m. (*tumeo swell*),
mound.

turriš, turriš, f., *tower.* **TUR-**
RET.

tūtōr, ūrīs, m. (*tueor protect*),
guardian; TUTOR.

tūtūs, ā, ūm (*tueor protect*),
safe.

tuš, ā, ūm, poss. pron. (*tu thou,*
you), *thy, thine; your, yours.*

týrannūs, ī, m., *monarch; tyrant.*

U.

ūbēr, ūbērīs, n, *udder; teat.*

ūbī, adv., when, where.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultūs sūm,
take revenge; avenge.

ullūs, ā, ūm, any [see 24].

ultēriōr, ultēriūs (*ulter that is*
beyond), *farther* [see 85]. **UL-**
TERIOR.

ultrā, prep. w. acc., beyond.
ULTRA-.

ūnā, adv. (*unus one and the*
same), *at the same time; in*
company, together.

undē, adv., from which place,
whence.

undīque, adv. (*undē, que*),
from all parts; on all sides.

ūnūs, ā, ūm, one, single; one and
the same; pl., alone [see 24].

urbs, urbīs, f., *city*. SUB-URBS.
ūsūs, ūs, m. (*utor use*), USE; advantage.

usquē, adv., even; till.

ūt and **ūtī**, conj., that, in order that; as.

ūtēr, utrā, utrūm, which of two, which [see 24].

ūterquē, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē; gen. **utriusquē**, etc. [declined like **ūtēr**, see 24], each, both.

ūtilīs, ūtilē (*utor use*, suffix *ilis* denoting capability), useful, beneficial, profitable.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsūs sūm, USE, make use of; adopt.

utrūm, adv. (uter which of two), whether.

uvā, ae, f., a grape; a bunch of grapes.

uxōr, uxōris, f., wife.

V.

vāco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, be unoccupied. VACATE, VACANT, VACATION.

vādūm, ī, n. (*vado go*), ford, shallow.

vāgītūs, ūs, m. (*vagio cry, squall*), crying, squalling.

vāgor, ārī, ātūs sūm (*vagus roaming about*), roam about, wander about. VAGA-BOND.

vāleo, ērē, uī, ītūm, PRE-VAIL.

vallūm, ī, n. (*vallus the line of palisades, stakes, set about an intrenchment*), rampart, intrenchment.

vasto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*vastus empty, desolate*), lay waste, DEVASTATE.

vectīgal, vectīgalīs, n. (*veho carry*), toll paid for carrying goods into a country; tax; revenue.

vēhēmentēr, vēhēmentiūs, vēhēmentissimē, adv. (*vehemens violent*), violently, severely; furiously; VEHMENTLY.

vēl, conj., or; **vēl — vēl**, either — or.

vendo, vendērē, vendīdī, vendītūm (*venum sale, do give*), sell. VEND.

vēnio, vēnīrē, vēnī, ventūm, come; arrive at.

verbēr, ērīs, n., blow. RE-VERBER-ATE.

verbūm, ī, n., word. VERB, VERBAL.

vēreor, vērērī, vēritūs sūm, fear.

vērō, adv. (*verus true*), in truth, truly; indeed; but.

vescor, vescī, fill one's self with; live upon; eat.

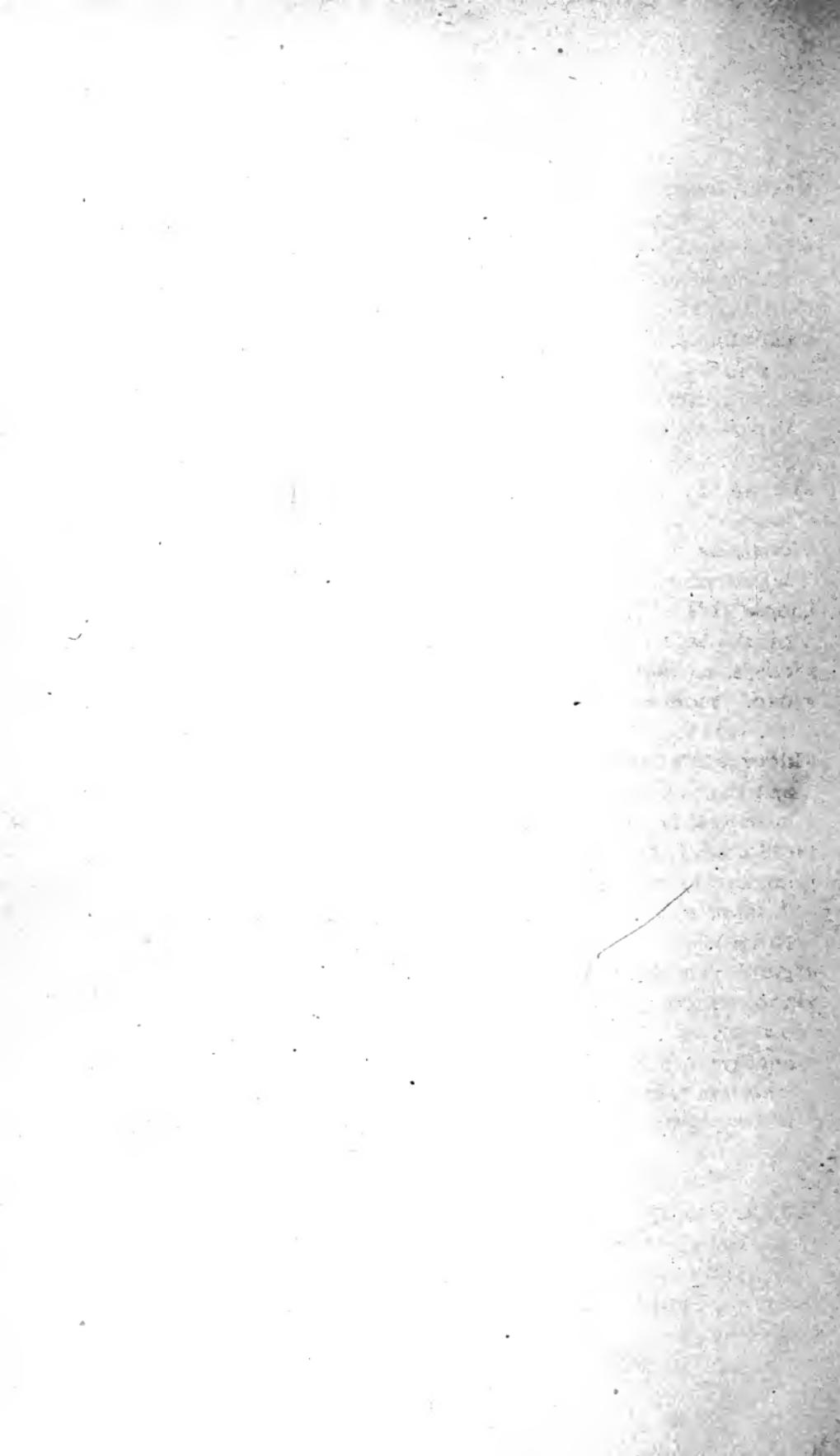
Vēsontio, ūnīs, f., the chief town of the Sequāni.

vespēr, vespērīs and **vespēr, ī**, m., evening star; evening; ad vesperūm, till evening. VESPER, VESPERS.

Vestā, ae, f., *Vesta*, the goddess of the hearth, to whom a perpetual fire was kept burning.

Vestālis, ē, of or belonging to *Vesta*, *Vestal*.

- vestér, vestră, vestrūm, poss.** pron., *your, yours.*
- většs, gen. větěřs, old, long standing, ancient.** VETERAN, IN-VETER-ATE.
- vexillūm, ī, n.** (*velum sail), standard; flag.*
- vexo, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*veho car-ry), trouble, annoy, harass.* VEX, VEXATION, VEXATIOUS.
- viā, ae, f.** *way, road; path; march.*
- vicēsimūs, ā, ūm** (*viginti twen-ty), twentieth.*
- victor, ūris, m., conqueror.**
- victoriā, ae, f., VICTORY.**
- vicūs, ī, m., village**
- vídeo, vídērē, vídī, vísūm,** see.
- vídeor, vídērī, vísūs sūm,** pass. and deponent, *be seen; seem; seem good or proper.*
- vígliā, ae, f.** (*vigilo to watch), watch; *de tertia vigilia, in the third watch.* See LN. LV., NOTE 5.*
- vígintī, num. adj. indecl., twenty.**
- vinco, vincērē, vici, victūm,** conquer.
- vincūlūm, ī, n.** (*vincio bind), a chain; in vincūla conjicēre, to throw into prison.*
- vindīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, claim.** VINDICATE, VINDICATION.
- vír, víri, m., man; hero; husband.** See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.
- virgō, īnīs, f.** (*vireo flourish, bloom), VIRGIN.*
- virtūs, virtūtīs, f.** (*vir man, hero), valor, courage; VIRTUE.*
- vís, vís,** [acc. vīm, dat. and abl. vī; pl., vīrēs, vīrīūm, vīrībūs, etc.] f., strength, power.
- vítā, ae, f.** (*vivo live), life.* VITAL.
- vítis, īs, f., vine.**
- víto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, shun, avoid.**
- vix, adv., with difficulty; scarcely, hardly.**
- vōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, call, sum- mon, invite.** VOCATION, VOCATIVE.
- vōlo, vellē, vōluī, be WILLING; wish; desire** [see 125].
- vōluntās, ātīs, f.** (*volo to wish), wish, consent.* VOLUNTARY.
- vos, pers. pron. pl., you** [see 112].
- vox, vōcīs, f., VOICE.** VOCAL.
- vulnēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*vulnus wound), to wound.*
- vulnūs, vulnēřs, a wound.** VULNER-ABLE.
- vulpes, īs, f., fox.**



II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding.
See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, be able, possum.
about, w. numerals, ad, circiter.
abundance, copia.
accuse, accuso.
across, trans.
adopt, utor.
advancing, veniens.
advise, moneo.
affair, res.
after, prep. post; conj. postquam.
afterwards, postea.
against, in, contra.
aid, auxilium; to aid, juvo.
all, every, omnis; pl. omnes;
all, the whole, totus.
ally, socius.
almost, paene, prope.
alone, solus.
also, etiam.
although, quum, etsi.
ambassador, legatus.
among, apud, inter, in.
and, et, atque, que; both — and,
et — et.
animal, animal.
announce, nuncio.
any, quis, ullus.
anything, quid, aliquid (116, a).
appoint, creo.

arms, arma.

army, exercitus, agmen.
around, circum.
arrive, pervenio.
arrival, adventus.
ascertain, cognosco.
as soon as, postquam; as soon as
possible, quam primum.
ask, quaero; ask for, rogo.
assemble, convenio.
assembly, concilium.
assist, adsum.
at home, domi.
attack, impetus; to attack, op-
pugno.
attempt, conor.
at Caesar's feet, Caesari ad pe-
des.
auxiliaries, auxilia.
avoid, vito.
away, take away, tollo.

B.

bad, malus.
baggage, impedimenta.
bank, ripa.
battle, proelium, pugna.
be, sum; be present, adsum; be
from or distant, absun.
beautiful, pulcher.

<i>because, quod, quia.</i>	<i>can, possum.</i>
<i>become, fio; become master of, potior.</i>	<i>capture, expugno.</i>
<i>before, ante, pro; priusquam.</i>	<i>carry, carry on, gero; carry on war, bellum gero; bello.</i>
<i>beg for, peto.</i>	<i>cart, carrus.</i>
<i>beginning, initium.</i>	<i>cause, causa.</i>
<i>beseige, oppugno.</i>	<i>cavalry, equitātus; of cavalry, equestrer.</i>
<i>best, optimus.</i>	<i>cavalryman, eques.</i>
<i>betake myself, me confero, me recipio.</i>	<i>censure, accūso.</i>
<i>better, melior.</i>	<i>character, natūra.</i>
<i>between, inter.</i>	<i>chief, princeps.</i>
<i>big, magnus.</i>	<i>choose, creo.</i>
<i>bold, audax.</i>	<i>citadel, arx.</i>
<i>born, be born, nascor.</i>	<i>citizen, civis.</i>
<i>both, uterque; both — and, et — et.</i>	<i>city, urbs.</i>
<i>boy, puer.</i>	<i>cliff, rupes.</i>
<i>brave, fortis.</i>	<i>cold, frigus.</i>
<i>bravely, fortiter.</i>	<i>collect, comporto, confero, con-dūco.</i>
<i>break up (camp), (castra) moveo.</i>	<i>come, venio; come together, con-venio; come to, pervenio.</i>
<i>bridge, pons.</i>	<i>comitium, comitium.</i>
<i>bring, fero; bring upon, inféro.</i>	<i>command, be in command of, prae-sum.</i>
<i>broad, latus.</i>	<i>company, in company, una.</i>
<i>brother, frater.</i>	<i>complain, queror.</i>
<i>building, aedificium.</i>	<i>conceal, occulto.</i>
<i>burn, incendo, cremo; burn up, exūro, combūro.</i>	<i>concerning, de.</i>
<i>but if, sin.</i>	<i>confidence, fides.</i>
<i>buy, emo.</i>	<i>congratulate, gratūlor.</i>
<i>by, a, ab; by no means, minime.</i>	<i>conquer, vinco.</i>
O.	
<i>call, summon, voco; call, name, appello; call together, convō-co; call to mind, commemōro.</i>	<i>consent, voluntas.</i>
<i>camp, castra; pitch a camp, castra pono; break up camp, castra moveo.</i>	<i>consider, habeo, duco.</i>
	<i>conspiracy, conjuratio.</i>
	<i>consul, consul; in the consulship of Caesar, Caesare consule.</i>
	<i>continually, continenter.</i>
	<i>corn, frumentum.</i>

could, past tense of **possum**.
council, **concilium**.
counsel, **consilium**.
country, *fatherland*, **patria**.
cowardly, *ignāvus*.
cross, **transeo**.

D.

danger, **pericūlum**.
dangerous, **periculōsus**.
daughter, **filia**.
dawn, *at the earliest dawn*, **prima luce**.
day, *dies*; *at daybreak*, **prima luce**; *on the day before*, **pridie**.
death, **mors**.
deceive, **decipio**.
decide, **statuo**.
decision, **judicium**.
deep, **altus**.
defend, **defendo**.
delay, **moror**.
deliberate, **delibēro**.
demand, **postūlo**, **posco**.
depart, **discēdo**.
departure, **profectio**.
describe, **designo**.
design, **consilium**.
desire, **studium**, **cupidītas**.
desirous, **cupīdus**.
destroy, **deleo**.
destruction, **pernicies**.
determine, **judīco**.
devastate, **vasto**.
die, **morior**.
differ, **diffēro**.
difficulty, **angustiae**; *with difficulty*, **vix**.

dig, **fodio**.
direction, **pars**.
distance, **spatium**.
distant, *be distant*, **absum**; *most distant*, **extrēmus**.
distinguished, **nobīlis**.
disturb, **commoveo**.
ditch, **fossa**.
divulge, **enuncio**.
do, **facio**.
draw, **duco**.
dwell, **incōlo**.

E.

each, *to each other*, **inter se**.
easily, **facīle**.
easy, **facīlis**; *very easy*, **perfacīlis**.
either — or, **aut — aut**.
elect, **creo**.
embassy, **legatio**.
empire, **imperium**.
empty, **influō**.
encamp, **castra pono**; **consīdo**.
encompass, **contīneo**.
encourage, **confirmo**.
end, **finis**.
endeavor, **nitor**.
endure, **subeo**.
enemy, **hostis**.
enervate, **effemīno**.
entire, **totus**.
entreat, **implōro**, **oro**.
equal, **par**, **aequus**.
establish, **confirmo**.
even, *not even*, **ne — quidem**.
excel, **praecēdo**, **praesto**.
exhort, **hortor**.
expectation, **spes**.

extraordinary, incredibilis.
eye, oculus.

F.

far, by far, longe; very far, longissime.
farther, adj., ulterior; adv., longius.
father, pater.
father-in-law, sacer.
fatherland, patria.
favor, faveo.
fear, timor; to fear, timeo, vereor.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fifteen, quindēcim.
fifth, quintus.
fight, pugno.
find, reperio.
fire, ignis; set on fire, incendo.
first, primus; in the first part of the night, prima nocte.
five, quinque.
flight, fuga.
flee, fugio.
flow, fluo.
follow, sequor.
fond, cupidus.
foot, pes; at the foot of the mountain, sub monte.
for, de w. abl., ad w. acc.; for this reason, hoc, eo.
foraging, pabulatio.
forest, silva.
forget, obliviscor.
former, pristinus, vetus.
forth, lead forth, edūco.

fortify, munio.
fortune, fortūna.
forward, send forward, praemitto; move forward, promoveo.
free, liber; of one's own free will, sua sponte.
friend, amīcus.
friendly, amīcus.
friendship, amicitia.
from, from near, a, ab; from out of, e, ex.
furiously, vehementer.
furnish, facio.
furthest, extrēmus.
future, in the future, in reliquum tempus.

G.

garrison, praesidium.
general, imperātor.
generosity, liberalitas.
get possession of, potior.
get rid of, depōno.
girl, puella.
give, do; give orders, impēro; give satisfaction, satisfacio.
glory, gloria.
go, eo; go forth, exeo.
god, deus.
goddess, dea.
gone, perf. part. of exigo.
good, bonus.
government, imperium.
grandfather, avus.
grant, concēdo.
great, magnus; so great, tantus.
grievous, gravis.
guard, custos.

H.

- happen, accido, fio.*
happy, felix.
harass, vexo.
hasten, maturo, contendō, ac-
curro.
have, habeo.
he says, dicit.
hear, audio.
height, altitudo.
help, juvo.
hem in, contineo.
high, altus.
highest, summus.
hill, collis.
hindrance, impedimentum.
his, his own, suus.
hither, citerior.
hold, habeo, obtineo, teneo;
hold a conference, collōquor.
home, at home, domi; homeward,
domum; from home, domo.
hope, spes.
horse, equus.
hostage, obses.
hour, hora.
house, domus.
hurl, conjicio.
husband, vir.

I.

- I, ego.*
if, si.
implore, imploro.
import, importo.
in, into, in.
incite, facio.

- influence, auctoritas.*
influenced, adductus.
inform Caesar, Caesarem cer-
tiorem facio.
infuse, injicio.
inquire, quaero.
insult, contumelia.
intervene, intersum.
invite, arcesso.

J.

- just, justus.*

K.

- keep, teneo; keep from, pro-*
hibeo.
kill, caedo, interficio.
kindness, beneficium.
king, rex.
know, scio; know, find out, co-
gnosco; not know, nescio.

L.

- land, terra.*
language, lingua.
large, magnus.
late in the day, multo die.
law, lex, jus.
lay waste, vasto.
lead, duco; lead forth, educo.
leader, dux.
leave, relinquō.
left, sinister.
legate, legatus.
legion, legio.
letter, epistola.

<i>levy on, impōno.</i>	<i>move, moveo; move forward, pro-moveo.</i>
<i>lieutenant, legātus.</i>	<i>much, multus.</i>
<i>like, similis.</i>	<i>multitude, multitūdo.</i>
<i>line of battle, acies.</i>	<i>murder, caedes; to murder, cae-do, occido.</i>
<i>little, paulus; a little, paulo.</i>	<i>my, my own, meus.</i>
<i>lofty airs, spirītus.</i>	
<i>long, for a long time, diu; longer, diutius.</i>	
<i>look at, intueor; look out for, prospicio.</i>	N.
<i>love, amor; to love, amo.</i>	<i>narrow pass, angustiae.</i>
	<i>nature, natūra.</i>
M.	<i>near, circum, ad.</i>
	<i>nearest, proximus.</i>
	<i>nearly, fere.</i>
<i>make, facio; make or deliver a speech, oratiōnem habeo;</i>	<i>neighbors, finitimi.</i>
<i>make haste, matūro; make upon, infēro.</i>	<i>neither — nor, neque — neque.</i>
<i>man, vir, homo.</i>	<i>nine, novem.</i>
<i>manner, in such a manner, ita.</i>	<i>no, none, nullus.</i>
<i>many, multi.</i>	<i>nobility, nobilitas.</i>
<i>march, iter; to march, iter facēre.</i>	<i>noble, nobilis.</i>
<i>marriage, matrimonium; to give in marriage, in matrimonium dare.</i>	<i>not, non; not — even, ne — quidem.</i>
<i>master, become master of, potior.</i>	<i>none the less, nihilo minus.</i>
<i>means, by no means, minime; by means of, see 54.</i>	<i>nothing, nihil.</i>
<i>memory, memoria.</i>	<i>notice, animadverto.</i>
<i>mile, mille passuum.</i>	<i>number, numērus.</i>
<i>mind, animus, mens.</i>	
<i>misfortune, incommōdum.</i>	
<i>missile, telum.</i>	O.
<i>month, mensis.</i>	
<i>more, magis, amplius; be more willing, malo.</i>	<i>obtain, obtineo, consēquor</i>
<i>mother, mater.</i>	<i>occupy, occūpo.</i>
<i>mountain, mons.</i>	<i>often, saepe.</i>
	<i>old, vetus, natus.</i>
	<i>on, upon, in.</i>
	<i>on account of, propter.</i>
	<i>on all sides, undīque.</i>
	<i>on the day before, pridie.</i>
	<i>one, unus.</i>

<i>one by one, singūli.</i>	<i>power, royal power, sovereign power, regnum.</i>
<i>one party — the other, altēri — altēri.</i>	<i>practicable, facīlis.</i>
<i>opinion, sententia.</i>	<i>practice, exercitatio.</i>
<i>opportunity, potestas, facultas.</i>	<i>praetor, praetor.</i>
<i>or, aut, vel, an.</i>	<i>prepare, compāro.</i>
<i>order, give orders, impēro.</i>	<i>present, be present, adsum.</i>
<i>other, aliud; to each other, from each other, inter se.</i>	<i>press, press upon, premo.</i>
<i>ought, oportet, debeo.</i> See also L.N. LXX.	<i>prevail upon, permoveo.</i>
<i>our, our own, noster.</i>	<i>prevent, retineo.</i>
<i>out, set out, proficiscor; out of, e, ex.</i>	<i>price, pretium.</i>
<i>overcome, supēro.</i>	<i>private, privātus.</i>
<i>own, his own, suus; my own, meus; your own, tuus, vester; their own, suus.</i>	<i>proceed, procēdo.</i>
	<i>promise, pollicor.</i>
	<i>protection, praesidium.</i>
	<i>province, provincia.</i>
	<i>provisions, commeātus.</i>
	<i>pursue, persēquor.</i>
	<i>put off, confēro.</i>

P.

pace, passus.
part, pars.
party, one party — the other, altēri — altēri.
pass the winter, hiēmo.
peace, pax.
people, popūlus.
peril, pericūlum.
persist, persevēro.
persuade, persuadeo.
pitch a camp, castra pono.
place, locus; place, put, pono.
plan, consilium.
please, placeo.
pledge, fides.
poor, pauper.
possession, possessio; get possession of, potior.

R.

ready, parātus.
rear of an army, agmen novissimum.
reason, causa.
recall to mind, reminiscor.
recent, recens.
refinement, humanitas.
reign, regno.
rejoice, laetor.
relief, subsidium.
remain, maneo.
remaining, relīquus.
remember, memīni; memoria teneo.
remembrance, memoria.
remove, moveo, removeo.

<i>reply, responsum; to reply, respondeo.</i>	<i>separate, dividō.</i>
<i>report, enuncio.</i>	<i>set on fire, incendo.</i>
<i>resolve, constituo.</i>	<i>set out, proficiscor.</i>
<i>rest, the rest, cetēri; rest of, reliquus.</i>	<i>severely, graviter, vehementer.</i>
<i>restrain, retineo, prohibeo.</i>	<i>ship, navis.</i>
<i>return, revertor, revertō.</i>	<i>short, brevis; shortest way or route, proximum iter.</i>
<i>revenue, vectigal.</i>	<i>show, probo.</i>
<i>reward, praemium.</i>	<i>shun, vito.</i>
<i>rich, dives.</i>	<i>side, this side of, citra.</i>
<i>ridge, jugum.</i>	<i>sides, on all sides, undique.</i>
<i>right, dexter.</i>	<i>sight, conspectus.</i>
<i>ripe, matūrus.</i>	<i>signal, signum.</i>
<i>river, flūmen.</i>	<i>since, quum.</i>
<i>road, via.</i>	<i>single, unus.</i>
<i>rout, pello.</i>	<i>sister, soror.</i>
<i>route, iter.</i>	<i>skilful, peritus.</i>
<i>royal power, regnum.</i>	<i>slave, servus.</i>
<i>ruin, pernicies.</i>	<i>slavery, servitus.</i>
	<i>small, parvus.</i>
	<i>so, ita; with adjectives, tam; so great, tantus.</i>

S.

<i>sad, tristis.</i>	<i>soldier, miles.</i>
<i>sake, for the sake of, causā.</i>	<i>some, some one, aliquis. See 116, a.</i>
<i>same, the same, idem.</i>	<i>son, filius; son-in-law, gener.</i>
<i>satisfaction, give satisfaction, satisfacio.</i>	<i>soon, matūre.</i>
<i>satisfy, satisfacio.</i>	<i>sovereignty, sovereign power, regnum.</i>
<i>say, dico; he says, dicit.</i>	<i>Spain, Hispania.</i>
<i>sea, mare.</i>	<i>speak, loquor.</i>
<i>see, video.</i>	<i>speech, oratio; make, deliver a speech, orationem habeo.</i>
<i>seem, video; it seems good, videtur.</i>	<i>stand, sto.</i>
<i>seize, occupo.</i>	<i>state, civitas.</i>
<i>select, deligo.</i>	<i>station, colloco, constituo.</i>
<i>sell, vendo.</i>	<i>stay, maneo.</i>
<i>senator, senātor.</i>	<i>storm, expugno.</i>
<i>send, mitto; send forward, praemitto.</i>	<i>strengthen, confirmo.</i>

<i>strive, nitor.</i>	<i>third, tertius.</i>
<i>such, tantus.</i>	<i>this, hic.</i>
<i>sufficient, sufficiently, satis; with sufficient ease, satis com- mōde.</i>	<i>those, illi.</i>
<i>suitable, idoneus, commōdus.</i>	<i>three days, triduum.</i>
<i>summer, aestas.</i>	<i>three hundred, trecenti.</i>
<i>summon, voco, convōco.</i>	<i>through, per.</i>
<i>sunset, occāsus solis.</i>	<i>throw one's self, se projicēre.</i>
<i>supply, copia; supplies, res fru- mentaria, commeātus.</i>	<i>till evening, ad vespērum.</i>
<i>surround, cingo.</i>	<i>time, tempus; for a long time, diu.</i>
<i>survive, supersum.</i>	<i>to, ad.</i>
<i>suspicion, suspicio.</i>	<i>to-day, hodie.</i>
<i>swiftly, celeriter.</i>	<i>together, come together, convenio.</i>
	<i>tongue, lingua.</i>
	<i>top of the mountain, summus mons.</i>
	<i>towards, ad; towards the north, sub septemtrionib⁹.</i>
	<i>tower, turris.</i>
	<i>town, oppidum.</i>
	<i>trader, mercātor.</i>
	<i>train up, instituo.</i>
	<i>tribute, stipendium.</i>
	<i>troops, copiae.</i>
	<i>try, conor.</i>
	<i>twenty, viginti.</i>
	<i>two days, biduum.</i>
T.	
<i>take, capture, capio, expugno;</i>	
<i>take away, tollo; take to one's self, sumo.</i>	
<i>tarry, moror.</i>	
<i>teach, doceo.</i>	
<i>ten, decem.</i>	
<i>tend, pertineo.</i>	
<i>territory, ager, fines.</i>	
<i>than, quam.</i>	
<i>that, ille.</i>	
<i>that, in order that, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē.</i>	
<i>that not, nē; after verbs of fearing, ut.</i>	
<i>the same, idem.</i>	
<i>there, in that place, ibi.</i>	
<i>their, their own, suus.</i>	
<i>they, them, see LN. LVIII.,</i>	
<i>NOTE 2.</i>	
<i>thing, res.</i>	
<i>think, puto, abītror.</i>	
U.	
	<i>under, sub.</i>
	<i>unoccupied, be unoccupied, vaco.</i>
	<i>until, dum.</i>
	<i>unwilling, be unwilling, nolo.</i>
	<i>upon, in.</i>
	<i>upper, superior.</i>
	<i>urge, hortor.</i>
	<i>use, utor; make use of, utor.</i>
	<i>useful, utilis.</i>

V.

valor, virtus.

*very, valde; very easy, perfaci-
lis; very great, maximus; very
is often rendered by ipse: e. g.
the very city, urbs ipsa.*

*vicinity, in or into the vicinity of,
ad w. name of town in acc.*

victory, victoria.

W.

wage, gero.

wages, merces.

wagon, carrus.

want, exspecto.

walled town, oppidum.

wanting, be wanting, desum.

war, bellum.

waste, lay waste, vasto.

*watch, vigilia; in the third watch,
de tertia vigilia.*

way, via.

we, nos. See LN. LVII.

wealthy, copiosus.

weapon, telum.

weep, fleo; weeping, flens.

what? quid?

what sort of a? qui? See LN.

LX.

when, quum.

where, ubi.

whether, utrum

which, quod.

while, dum.

who, qui; who? quis?

whole, totus.

why? quid?

wide, latus.

willing, be willing, volo.

win, concilio.

wing of an army, cornu.

winter, pass the winter, hiemo.

winter-quarters, hiberna.

wish, volo.

with, cum.

withdraw, se recipere.

without, sine.

withstand, sustineo.

witness, testis.

woman, mulier.

word, verbum.

worthy, dignus.

*wound, vulnus; to wound, vul-
nero.*

write, scribo.

wrong, injuria.

Y.

year, annus.

yet, tamen.

yoke, jugum.

you, tu, vos. See LN. LVII.

your, tuus, vester.

youth, adolescens.

EDUCATIONAL PUBLICATIONS
OF
S. C. GRIGGS & CO., CHICAGO.

MAILING PRICE.

BOISE — FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. A new edition.
Revised by J. G. PATTENGILL. Adapted to Goodwin's, and to Hadley-Allen's Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Xenophon's *Anabasis*. \$1.25.

BOISE — FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and Hadley-Allen. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.00.

BOISE — FIRST SIX BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and Hadley Allen. Revised Edition. By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.

BOISE—EXERCISES IN GREEK SYNTAX. Being Exercises in some of the more difficult Principles of Greek Syntax; with References to the Grammars of Crosby, Curtius, Goodwin, Hadley, Hadley-Allen, and Kühner. A Sequel to "Jones's Greek Prose Composition." By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D. \$1.25.

BOISE AND FREEMAN — SELECTIONS FROM VARIOUS GREEK AUTHORS. For the First Year in College. With Explanatory Notes, and References to Goodwin's Greek Grammar and to Hadley's Larger and Smaller Grammars. By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D., and J. C. FREEMAN, M.A. 12mo. Cloth. \$2.00.

CHITTENDEN — ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION. A Preparation for Rhetoric. By LUCY A. CHITTENDEN. 12mo. Cloth. 60 cents.

"Progressive, suggestive, and thoroughly practical." — Prof. E. E. Smith, *Purdue University, Ind.*

"After thorough trial in the class I unhesitatingly commend it." — F. S. Hotaling, *Prin. High School, Framingham, Mass.*

"As an elementary book, I know no work equal to it." — A. Martin, *LL.D., Pres. of De Pauw University, Ind.*

"It ought to be used in every high school." — A. V. Jewett, *Supt. of Schools, Abilene, Kan.*

"Between 600 and 700 copies will be required for immediate use." — E. A. Paul, *Prin. of High School, Washington, D.C.*

CROSS — ECLECTIC SHORT-HAND. Writing by Principles instead of Arbitrary Signs, for General Use and Verbatim Reporting. By J. GEO. CROSS, A.M. Complete in one volume. 12mo. Cloth. \$2.00.

D'OOGE — DEMOSTHENES ON THE CROWN. With Extracts from the Oration of Æschines against Ctesiphon, and Explanatory Notes. By M. L. D'OOGE, Ph.D. Professor of Greek, University of Michigan. Cloth. \$1.50.

Educational Publications of S. C. Griggs & Co.

JONES — EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. With References to the Grammars of Hadley and Allen, Goodwin, and Kühner and Taylor, and a full English-Greek vocabulary. By ELISHA JONES, M.A., Professor in the University of Michigan. 12mo. Half leather. \$1.00.

JONES — FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. Adapted to the Latin Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Chase, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES, M.A. 12mo. Half leather. \$1.25.

JONES — EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. With References to the Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES, M.A. \$1.00.

MORRIS — MANUAL OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE. Comprising biographical and critical notices of principal Greek and Roman authors, illustrative extracts from their works, etc. By CHARLES MORRIS. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.

PETERSON — NORWEGIAN-DANISH GRAMMAR AND READER. With a Vocabulary designed for American Students of the Norwegian-Danish language. By Rev. C. I. P. PETERSON, Professor of Scandinavian Literature. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.

STEVENS — SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS. With Introductions and Explanatory Notes. By W. A. STEVENS, A. M. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.

WELSH — ESSENTIALS OF GEOMETRY. By A. H. WELSH, Professor in Ohio State University. 8vo. Cloth. \$1.50.

WELSH — DEVELOPMENT OF ENGLISH LITERATURE AND LANGUAGE. By Prof. A. H. WELSH. University Edition. Complete in 1 vol., unabridged. Crown 8vo. Cloth. \$3.00.

“It is a work greatly needed. In plan and execution it seems to me all that could be asked for.” — John G. Whittier.

“Welsh’ ‘English Literature’ is unsurpassed for usefulness.” — J. Ernest Whitney, Instructor in English in Yale College.

WINCHELL — GEOLOGICAL EXCURSIONS; or, The Rudiments of Geology for Young Learners. By ALEXANDER WINCHELL, LL.D., Professor of Geology, etc., University of Michigan. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.

WINCHELL — GEOLOGICAL STUDIES; or, Elements of Geology for High Schools, Colleges, Normal and other Schools. By ALEXANDER WINCHELL, LL.D. One vol. 12mo. 540 pages, with 367 fine illustrations. \$3.00.

“It abounds with most excellent points and valuable information, and seems an American book beyond any other I have seen.” — Prof. A. P. Kelsey, Hamilton College, N. Y.

“I find it full of admirable suggestions in the way of conducting instruction, and of presenting the topics of geology to a class.” — H. S. Williams, Prof. of Nat. Sci., Cornell University.



Descriptive Circulars sent on application. Books will be mailed, postage paid, on receipt of price.



Verbs of naming, calling, showing, regarding,
showing, & the like verbs in the active
voice bear adverbials of the same thing

Other verbs of knowing, knowing, demanding & commanding
take, take, accusative, one of the lesson & one
of the things.

YB 36249

562547

b

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

